GWAVA Inc.

# **GWAVA** Retain

# Administration and User Guide

Version 3

"GWAVA" is a registered trade mark of GWAVA Inc, 100 Alexis Nihon, Suite 500, Saint Laurent, Quebec H4M 2P1 Retain" is a trade mark of GWAVA Inc, 100 Alexis Nihon, Suite 500, Saint Laurent, Quebec H4M 2P1 GroupWise is a trademark of Novell, Inc. Exchange and Windows are trademarks of Microsoft Inc. Facebook and Twitter are registered trademarks of their respective owners. Contents

# Post-Install Tasks.....7 Initial Setup Overview ......7

GWAVA Retain Initial Setup	8
About Storage Paths	9
Advanced Storage Options	9
Using GWAVA Retain	13
Logging In	13
Status and Updates	14
Saving Changes	
Notifications	
Modules	
Mailbox Mapping Options	
Exchange Module	
Social Messaging	
GroupWise Module	
Retain Job components:	
Jobs	
Schedules	
Profiles	
Exchange Profile	
GroupWise Profile	
About GroupWise's Smart Purge and Retention Flags	
Setting up SmartPurge and Retention flags in GroupWise 7	
Social Messaging Profile	
Workers	
Jobs	
Exchange Jobs	59
GroupWise Jobs	
Social Messaging Jobs	
Management	
Users	
Offline Password	
Creating a new user	71
Core Settings	
User Rights	
User-Level Rights Summary	
User-level rights	
The Read Configuration right (Redline Integration)	74
Mailboxes	
Address Book Selector	
Adding Mailboxes	
About "Show only recently cached items"	
Miscellaneous Tab	
GroupWise Proxy Support	
Groups	
Creating a New Group	

Group Rights	72
Deletion Management	75
Core Settings	75
Basic Options	75
Data Scope	76
Job Members	77
Notification	77
Schedule	77
Litigation Hold	78
Configuration	79
Server Configuration	79
Communications	79
Index	80
Storage	
Accounts	
Intruder Lockout	83
Maintenance	
Ignore Domains	85
Logging	
Auditing Records	
Miscellaneous	87
Export XML	87
Module Configuration	87
Storage Manager / Storage Engine	
Partitions	90
Stubbing Server	91
ConsoleOne GroupWise settings	91
Retain Stubbing Settings	93
Statistics Server Configuration	96
Licensing	103
Overview	104
Audit Log	104
System Log	105
Searching the Retain Archives	106
Quick View	107
Using Online Help	107
Browse	108
Language Selection	108
Merged Mailboxes	109
Browsing Tools (Widgets)	109
Browse Window Defaults	109
New Mailbox	110
Toolbar Options:	111
Specifying a Date Range	
Litigation Hold	111
Forwarding a Message	
PDF Export	112
Restore	115

Search	116
Opening/Viewing a Message	117
Search in More Detail	119
Search Window	119
Core Tab:	119
Selecting Mailboxes	120
Loading, Saving and Deleting Searches	120
Scope Tab:	121
Item Type	121
Sort Tab:	121
Misc. Tab:	121
Litigation hold	122
Shared Queries	122
Search Window	125
Core Settings	125
User Rights Tab	126
Mailboxes Tab	126
Miscellaneous Tab	126
Using the Retain Help System	127
About and Diagnostics Page	128
Diagnostic Buttons	129
Mailbox Merger / Splitter	
GW to Exchange Scope	
GW Exchange Migrator	
Appendix A: Backing up Retain	134
Fine tuning GWAVA Retain	135
Tomcat Memory Usage Tuning Overview	
Two Critical Issues	
General Recommendations	135
Retain Server Component	
Retain Worker Component(s)	135
Tomcat Configuration Parameters	136
How to change memory values	137
Checking memory:	
UPGRADED SYSTEMS	
Appendix B – Troubleshooting for Common GroupWise Problems	138
EA04	
D712/D714	138
C05D	
Other notes regarding GroupWise 7, SP 3 (7.0.3):	138
Appendix C – The Tools Folder	139
GroupWise tools	139
GroupWise Archive Migration Tool	139
Archive Migration Tool	
The Archive Plug-in	
Blob Extraction Tool	146
Single Sign On	
WebAccess	147

149
153
155
155
156
157
157
157
158
159
168
170
177
177

## **Important Notes and New Features**

Retain adds support for archiving Social Messaging. With the Retain for Social Messaging, activity in Facebook and Twitter is recorded and archived into Retain for full compliance. Retain for Social Messaging is designed as a virtual appliance, with full support for VMware ESX and ESI 5.

Retain's message store now has improved searching capability, with multiple simultaneous search fields and extended operator support. Lucene also has improved search abilities with a near real-time search support.

Retain 3 also boasts a new enhanced data store, full Office 365 support, and improvements to the deletion manager which improves performance, even while under maintenance lock.

Retain has also added a new reporting and statistics server. The Statistics Server gathers pertinent information on performance and messages and can generate reports on jobs, processes, and resources for the Retain Server and connected components. The reports can either be delivered immediately or through email.

Systems that are upgraded from previous versions of Retain must migrate the database. A database migration wizard is provided. Due to size and time considerations with the migration, a benchmark tool is provided to offer an estimate on how long the migration process will take. In addition, the migration temporarily requires substantial free disk space; up to twice the size of the current Retain database. Please look to the *Upgrading from Previous Versions of Retain* guide for detailed information.

# **Post-Install Tasks**

After running through the initial install guide for your OS, you are ready to configure Retain. From this point on, Retain works the same regardless which platform it is running on.

To get Retain ready for regular use, some final one-time procedures need to be run.

- Retain Server needs to be configured.
- Configure the relevant module(s).
- > At least one Retain Worker needs to be configured.

# **Initial Setup Overview**

- 1) Choose your storage path.
- 2) Retain prompts you for access information to your SQL Database Server.
  - You must create this database beforehand. (See the MySQL Quick Start section in the install guide, or documentation for the SQL server of your choice.)
  - Retain creates the tables, indexes, and prepares the database for use.

You will be prompted to provide SQL connection information for both the configuration and message store databases. For convenience and simplicity most installations store this information in the same database. The database(s) will be used to store Retain configuration, cached address books, and all saved message data.

- 3) Create an administrator account with the default username, admin. It is the first account to be created.
  - This account is special:
    - It has ALL admin rights
    - It never expires
    - It always uses "offline authentication", (authenticates using a password stored in the SQL configuration database).
  - Additional accounts can be created as desired with as many rights as you wish. User accounts may possess a mixture of administrator level and user level rights. As a result, users may have some admin level rights, but would not be considered an administrator.
- 4) Retain prompts you for the following SMTP information for notification and forwarding.

DNS host names are generally recommended instead of IP Addresses in
almost all cases due to
management and repair if
a server moves or is replaced.

- SMTP Server to use for sending messages. (DNS or IP) (use DNS whenever possible)
- From address. Enter the address that you want to appear in the "From" field on the messages Retain sends.

• To address. Enter the address to which Retain will send notification.

• Username: Enter the username to use for authentication with the SMTP server for relaying mail.

• Password: Enter the password for this username.

5) Select the indexing engine. There are two different indexing engines available for use with Retain: Lucene and Exalead. Exalead is to be used with larger systems and requires a separate dedicated server. Lucene is a high performance embedded indexer, which requires fewer servers, but is more memory intensive and does not offer high availability features. Please see the install guides and system requirements for more information on which is appropriate and should be used. Exalead is priced separately; see your appropriate sales representative.

After initial setup, configuration of a module and creation of a profile, schedule, worker, and job are required before messages can be archived.

# **GWAVA Retain Initial Setup**

- 1) Open your web browser.
- Go to http://<your-RetainServer-ip>/RetainServer
   Follow the wizard. You will see this screen initially:

🗯 Retain		
File Paths Message Store Database	0	Welcome to GWAVA Retain This wizard will quide you through the initial configuration of Retain.
Configuration Database Administrator Account SMTP Notification		Storage Path     Message Store Database     Configuration Database     Set Administrator Password     SH Administrator Password
Indexing Engine	0	Indexing Engine During each step, details will be provided to help guide you.
		File Path A storage path is required for Retain, under which indexes, attachments, backups is stored. The wizard will attempt to create the directory if it does not exist. If you receive an error, check the rights you granted to your Tomcat application.
		Storage Path Var/opt/beginfinite/retain  Advanced Settings
		If you are planning to use the standard engine or the NetApp engine, this path should point to a storage device with sufficient (significant) disk space. You may use mapped drives, UNC format, etc. For all engines except the standard engine (including NetApp), you'll need to perform additional configuration steps in the Storage Engine section of the main administrative interface, after completing the wizard.
		Continue

Please pay special attention to the Storage Path and the Advanced Settings (see <u>next page</u>). For descriptions of the different engines, see the <u>Storage Manager</u> section. If you select a storage system that is not local, be sure to visit the <u>Storage Manager</u> after the initial setup to ensure that all information has been provided.

- 4) You are now ready to start your initial Retain configuration. Specify a storage path for Retain. Accept the default path unless you have a reason to choose a different one. See the next page for an important note about storage paths. If you are specifying a custom storage path, Retain must have rights to the location. For Linux instructions see *Custom Storage Path Rights*, at the end of the Linux install guide.
- 5) Click "Continue".

#### **About Storage Paths**

Retain was designed to be very flexible in allowing you to choose where the data will be stored. Choosing the right hardware and software storage combination is crucial. Storage itself is a function of the operating system and hardware you choose.

As storage needs approach enterprise levels, the need to specify your data storage locations becomes more critical. Some hardware and operating systems have a hard limit of 2 Terabytes, for instance. In situations like these, a SAN might be a good choice for consideration. (Please visit the <u>Storage Manager</u> section to view options for different SAN systems.) Either way, it's imperative that you take the time to investigate your storage needs BEFORE you begin.

When choosing your storage system, bear in mind the following considerations:

- > 2 TB limit. Will storage needs ever exceed this?
- Solution States and kernel to support the storage system of your choice.
- File system and partitioning.
- ➢ Is a SAN right for you?
- Speed and reliability.
- Backup/restore is your responsibility.

#### **Advanced Storage Options**

For this reason, Retain offers the advanced storage options. (Located under Server Configuration.) You can specify where you want Retain to store its information.

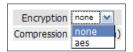
Storage		
The storage pa	ath is where indices and archives are stored. It should be on a highly reliable storage device, with plenty of disk space.	
Advanced Set	ttings /var/opt/beginfinite/retain	
Advanced Sett	tings	
For more advar	nced scenarios, some paths may be assigned to one device and some to another.	
Derive all file lo	ocations from above base path? 🗹	
Encryption	none M	
Compression (a	always on)	

By default, all data is stored under one master path, specified in the Storage section. From the Retain Server main screen, you can also find this under Server Configuration under the Index/Storage tab. If you wish to specify your storage locations in more detail, click on the "Advanced Settings".

Advanced Settings /var/opt/beginfin	te/retain	1 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
in the second		5.	
dvanced Settings			
or more advanced scenarios, some p Derive all file locations from above ba	aths may be assigned to one device and some to se path?	mother.	
Store attachments under this path	/var/opt/beginfinite/retain/archive		
tore xml mappings under this path	/var/opt/beginfinite/retain/xml		
	/var/opt/beginfinite/retain/xml /var/opt/beginfinite/retain/index		
Store index files under this path			
Store xml mappings under this path Store index files under this path Store Embedded DB under this path Store backups under this path	/var/opt/beginfinite/retain/index		

These fields are automatically populated if you only specify the main storage path. You may change them to point anywhere you wish. You may also change the storage locations later due to storage space needs. Please see the <u>Partitions</u> section for details. You also specify to encrypt the data as it's stored.

We strongly recommend for performance and recoverability that you do NOT encrypt using Retain but consider Block level encryption options (such as BitLocker) that have escrow keys and are processed directly at the operating system level.



#### Database Setup

Dete:				
🗮 Retain				
File Paths	$\bigcirc$	Welcome to GWAVA Re	tain	
Message Store Database	$\bigcirc$	This wizard will quide you through the initial confi	ouration of Retain	
Configuration Database	$\bigcirc$	Storage Path	3	
Administrator Account		Message Store Database     Configuration Database		
SMTP Notification	õ	<ul> <li>Set Administrator Password</li> </ul>		
Indexing Engine	õ	<ul> <li>SMTP Notification</li> <li>Indexing Engine</li> </ul>		
		During each step, details will be provided to help	quide vou.	
		Message Store Database Connection Parameter	atore	
		-	-	base created, and permissions for that database granted to a user. Be sure to specify:
				er 2005/2008, and PostGres 9.0+ are supported. MySQL 4.x will NOT work correctly. If using anificant bug fixes and performance enhancements.
		<ul> <li>Database Server: If the database serve</li> </ul>		Retain, change localhost to the IP address or host name of the machine. (Preferably a DNS
		<ul> <li>Database Name: Name of the database</li> </ul>	you have created for Retain to use.	
			the database. We recommend that you cre s to connect locally (same box setup) vs. Ri	ate a specific user with rights only to the "retain" database. Also, remember that many database EMOTELY (multibox setup).
		<ul> <li>Password: Password for access.</li> </ul>		
		Warning: If you have not setup the database ac	cording to the documentation, irreparable c	orruption to your data is likely to occur.
		Driver:	MySQL 5.0,5.1,5.5	•
		Database Server:	localhost	
		Database Name:	retain	
		DB Instance (MSSQL only):	default	
		DB Username:	root	
		DB Password:		
		If you are running MySQL, we also need the dat	tabase server root username/password for	the initial setup. This will not be stored
		DB ROOT Username:	root	
		DB ROOT Password:		
		Continue		

6) Next, this screen appears for entering the database connection parameters. This is the same information from the database created during the preparation phase. (See Install guide) The connection information must be supplied for both the storage and Configuration databases, though they can be housed in the same database. Assumed default is shown.

🗮 Retain			
File Paths	0	Welcome to GWAVA Retain	
Message Store Database		This wizard will guide you through the initial configuration of Retain.	
Configuration Database		Storage Path	
Administrator Account	$\bigcirc$	Message Store Database     Configuration Database	
SMTP Notification	$\bigcirc$	Set Administrator Password     SMTP Notification	
Indexing Engine	$\bigcirc$	Indexing Engine	
		During each step, details will be provided to help guide you.	
		Message Store Database Connection Parameters	
		To successfully create the tables the database server must be running	ing with the retain database created, and permissions for that database granted to a user. Be sure to specify:
		MySQL 5, make sure you install the latest version - even min • Database Server. If the database server is not running on the host name.) Including :port is legal syntax (e.g.: 192.168.2.31 • Database Name: Name of the database you have created for	r Retain to use. commend that you create a specific user with rights only to the "retain" database. Also, remember that many database
		Warning: If you have not setup the database according to the docum	nentation, irreparable corruption to your data is likely to occur.
		Driver:	MySQL 5.0,5.1,5.5 🔹
		Database Server:	MySQL 5.0,5.1,5.5 MS SQL 2005,2008
		Database Name:	Oracle 10,11 Postgres 9.0,9.1
		DB Instance (MSSQL only): DB Username:	
		DB Osemame: DB Password:	1001
		If you are running MySQL, we also need the database server root us	
		DB ROOT Username: DB ROOT Password:	root
		BERGETT BERWIN.	
		Continue	

Copyright © 2012 GWAVA Inc. All rights reserved.

7) Now, supply a password for Retain's administrator account (admin). **Do not forget what you choose here!** (Use the <u>Recover Admin</u> utility if you have lost the administrator password.)

😹 Retain		
File Paths Message Store Database Configuration Database Administrator Account SMTP Notification Indexing Engine Trusted Application Setup SOAP Connection	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	Welcome to GWAVA Retain This wizard will guide you through the initial configuration of Retain. • Storage Path • Message Store Database • Configuration Database • Set Administrator Password • Start Administrator Password • SMTP Notification • Indexing Engine • SOAP Connection During each step, details will be provided to help guide you.
		Administrator Account         This administrator account will be needed for full access to Retain. You may also create additional administrators once this setup wizard has completed.         Keep this password secure and safe, and consider creating a backup administrator account.         (If you do lose the account password, a utility is available to create a new account, in the Tools folder of your installation package)         Login Name:       admin         Password:       •••••         Confirm Password:       •••••

8) Enter the information for an SMTP relay host that Retain will use to send mail. Setup will attempt to send a test message. You cannot proceed with installation until the SMTP test message is successfully delivered. If you see an error, check firewall settings, (including local desktop/server firewalls such as McAfee, Symantec, and SUSE).

NOTE: Retain allows the creation of many user accounts that share administrative roles. The initial account created is not particularly special; it's merely a convenience to create one "super user" with all of the Administrative rights granted. DO NOT delete this account. If the admin account is deleted, please contact support or refer to the <u>Recover Admin</u> tool to restore a full administrator account.

😹 Retain		
File Paths	Welcome to GWAVA Retain	
Message Store Database Configuration Database Administrator Account SMTP Notification Indexing Engine	This wizard will guide you through the initial configuration of Retain.  Storage Path Message Store Database Set Administrator Password Set Administrator Password Indexing Engine During each step, details will be provided to help guide you.  SMTP Notification SMTP Notification SMTP Notification is used for sending you progress reports, and also is used whenever a user forwards a message from Retain. Below, you configure the defaults. These can be overridden on a per-job basis. Most of these entries are self-explanatory. The TO is used for job notifications, not for forwarding. The SMTP user and password are used for relaying	ou. ou. ports, and also is used whenever a user forwards a message from Retain. Below, you configure is. eved for job notifications, not for forwarding. The SMTP user and password are used for relaying will need it if you want to permit forwarding outside your Internet domain. rver: 192.168.1.104 orm): retain@gwava.com ess: admin@gwava.com ime: chris

9) Index Engine Selection

😹 Retain		
File Paths Message Store Database Configuration Database	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	Welcome to GWAVA Retain This wizard will guide you through the initial configuration of Retain. • Storage Path
Administrator Account SMTP Notification Indexing Engine	© ©	Message Store Database     Configuration Database     Set Administrator Password     SMTP Notification     Indexing Engine
		During each step, details will be provided to help guide you.           Step 5: Indexing Engine
		You now need to specify an Indexing Engine to use. This is an important choice, as your decision affects the scalability, hardware requirements, and capabilities of Retain. We strongly recommend you read the user manual and consider your options. Although it is possible to switch indexing engines, doing so requires rebuilding the entire index store, which can be an intensive and extremely lengthy process and should not be undertaken lightly. Here is a brief summary of the Indexing Engines provided:
		<ul> <li>Lucene - Fast and easy to use. Requires no additional software or hardware installation. Well suited for small scale environments that have only modest searching and storage requirements. Some features, such as extended queries, enhanced publishing and exporting, etc. are not available using the Lucene engine. Not clusterable or high availability friendly.</li> <li>Exalead - Fast, extremely powerful, and very scalable. Can be clustered with multiple index and search nodes. All Retain advanced features available. Requires one or more dedicated 64-bit servers (quad core recommended), with at least 16Gb RAM. Requires an installation process. Recommended for medium to large customers, as well as organizations that need advanced searching, exporting, availability functions.</li> </ul>
		Indexing Engine: Choose one of the listed engines  Choose one of the listed engines Exalead Lucene

- Lucene is the default indexing engine, and is included in Retain. It is well suited for smaller installations and requires no further configuration or management.
- Exalead is a more robust and powerful search engine, providing high availability and clustering features, as well as more advanced search operations. It requires additional hardware, as well as an additional license, which you may obtain from your sales representative. Exalead should not be installed on the same server where Retain server is installed.

If you wish to use Exalead at this point, it MUST be installed and configured before this step is completed. If selecting Exalead, provide the IP address or DNS name of the Exalead server and the active base port.

🗯 Retain		
File Paths	0	Welcome to GWAVA Retain
Message Store Database	0	This wizard will guide you through the initial configuration of Retain.
Configuration Database	0	Storage Path
Administrator Account	0	Message Store Database     Configuration Database
SMTP Notification	0	Set Administrator Password
Indexing Engine	0	SMTP Notification     Indexing Engine
		During each step, details will be provided to help guide you.
		The initial setup is complete. After you login, you will need to go to Module Configuration and configure your individual compliance solutions (GroupWise, Exchange, etc.). Afterwards, we recommend that you run all of the Test Connection options in the individual modules, and then do a Address Book synchronization.
		Complete

Initial setup is now complete. Select the 'Complete' button to be presented with the login prompt.

# **Using GWAVA Retain**

## **Logging In**

- 1) From your web browser, type: http://<YourServerIP/RetainServer
- 2) You'll be brought to the login screen:

🗮 Retain		
	Login Password Language E	nglish 🗸
/	>>	Login

3) After you log in, you will see the main administration page: (Non administrators will only see the Search Interface.)

Overview				
Documentation				
System Log				
Data Collection	Status			
	🐁 Jobs 🧟 Workers 🙀 Server 🥥 Updates	🔽 🧟		
Management				
Users		<u>^</u>		
Groups	Server			
	Index Migration in progress False			
Configuration	SQL Server OK			
Server Configuration	Server RetainServer (UTLWINCKLSITTPSJZFONSQG)			
Module Configuration	Stored EMails 0			
Storage Manager	Storage Engine datastore_process			
Statistics Server Configuration	Server started at: 23-Jul-2012 11:10:41			
Licensing	Archived since server started (total/dupes/new ): 0 / 0 / 0			
o modules configured. Use	Server errors 0			
odule Configuration.				
t least one license has expired	Installation time 23-Jul-2012 11:21:35			
r will be expiring soon.	Enable Index Optimization Yes			
	Last Index Optimization Never			
	Total documents ever indexed 0			
	Total emails in memory queue awaiting indexing 0			
	Total documents indexed so far since uptime 0			
	Total emails indexed so far since uptime 0			
	Total emails with indexing errors since uptime 0			
	Total emails with items skipped (*) since uptime 0			
	Last item indexed at Never			
	Time to process last batch (ms) 0			
	Indexing thread alive True			
	(*) Items may be skipped in indexing for perfectly benign reasons, such as there being no handler for that specific type of file or the file being	ng too		
	large according to your settings in Server Configuration. Also, the ratio of documents to emails is indeterminate, but usually ranges from 1-2			
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
	* LIII			

An informational screen is displayed, showing among other things the latest job activity, server health information, and software updates that are available.

# Note: Only users possessing at least one administrative role will see the administrator's screen on login. Other users will be forwarded to the <u>Search Interface</u> (covered later).

#### **Status and Updates**

The status page has four different tabs which show the status of your system. The status page is set to display the tab that is deemed to require the most attention, or is deemed to hold the most important information at a given time. For instance, if an error has occurred, that tab will be shown, likewise the update tab will be shown by default if there is an update available. The tabs are discussed below.

The Server tab shows the basic status of the Server with the messages archived and maintenance information. The Workers tab shows the workers connected, and the status of each.

🐇 Jobs 🛛 🚨 Workers	Server 🧃	Updates
_		
Server		
Index Migration in progres	s	False
SQL Server		ОК
Server		RetainServer (GRZFZEOEQRNSETOAJSZYDY
Stored EMails		0
Storage Engine		standard
Server started at:		15-Mar-2011 19:51:32
Archived since server star	ed (total/dupes/new	): 0 / 0 / 0
Server errors		0
Installation time	12-Jan-2011 09:02:14	4
Enable Index Optimization	Yes	
Last Index Optimization	11-Mar-2011 01:02:0	0
Total documents ever ind	exed	45363
Total emails in memory qu	eue awaiting indexing	0
Total documents indexed	so far since uptime	0
Total emails indexed so fa	r since uptime	0
Total emails with indexing	errors since uptime	0

🐇 Jobs 🛛 👌 Workers	Server 🌒 Update
Workers	
Worker	migrator
Last contact	Never
Last Job:	increa:
Last job start:	Never
Last job end:	Never
Registered:	Never
Total messages stored:	0
Total mailboxes scanned:	0
Worker	new worker
Last contact	15-Mar-2011 22:21:26
Last Job:	new exchange
Last job start:	15-Mar-2011 22:21:27
Last job end:	15-Mar-2011 22:21:30
Registered:	26-Jan-2011 05:07:25
Total messages stored:	18590
Total mailboxes scanned:	7

The Jobs page shows the jobs that are assigned to the

server and their status. You also can select the "show only active jobs" checkbox, and only jobs that are currently running will be displayed.

🍐 Jobs	💍 Workers	Server	\varTheta Updates
Jobs			
Show on	ly active jobs		
Job		new exchange	
Job running		No	
Job began		15-Mar-2011 22:21	1:27
Job ended		15-Mar-2011 22:21	1:30
Time elapsed	ł	0d : 0h : 0m	
Next job tim	e	Find	
Last PO / Ma	ilbox scanned	/	
Total errors		0	
Total mailbox	kes (job)	2	
Total messag	jes (job)	0	
Total messag	ges (lifetime)	0	
Job		new job	
Job running		No	
Job began		03-Mar-2011 20:45	5:00

4	🕹 Jobs	Sworkers	Server	🤤 Updates
	Updates			
	You have the	btest build		
	rou nave che	acese build.		
	Announcem	ents		
		releases are th	e newest for yo	ur system:

The updates tab displays whether there is a later version of Retain available. This tab will be displayed by default only if there is a new update available.

If you are using Exalead as your indexing engine, you will see a 'Trigger Exalead Indexing' button on the 'Server' tab of the Status and Updates page. Selecting this button will force an immediate indexing run by Exalead.

🐇 Jobs 🛛 ಿ Workers	Server	Updates
Installation time	03-Jun-2010 10:20	6:22
Enable Address Book Caching	Yes	
Last Address Book Cache	03-Jun-2010 11:3	0:45
Enable Index Optimization	Yes	
Last Index Optimization	Never	
Total documents ever indexe	d	8423
Exalead internal queue		8423 Trigger Exalead Indexing
Total emails in memory queue	e awaiting indexing	0
Total documents indexed so	far since uptime	8423
Total emails indexed so far sir	nce uptime	1821
Total emails with indexing err	ors since uptime	0
Total emails with items skippe	ed (*) since uptime	772
Last item indexed at		03-Jun-2010 14:10:29
Time to process last batch (n	ns)	660

After many messages are sent to the Exalead server for indexing, these items are queued. In some cases, there may be a noticeable delay in the processing of that queue, as other processes (such as searching) take high priority. To force an immediate indexing run, press this button.

# Warning: Repeatedly using this button can overwhelm your Exalead server, and should NOT be necessary in normal operations.

#### **Saving Changes**

Retain uses a web interface for all administration, and is unaware of changes made on the webpage until the information is returned to the Server. To make sure you keep all changes you have made in the interface, select the "Save Changes" button to commit the change to the Server. When you make a change, the website is aware and you will see the 'Save Changes' button become colored at the top right of the screen:

About   Status & Updates   Logout				
Save Changes	H	æ	2	

When the "Save Changes" lights up, click on the disk icon to save any changes you have made on this screen otherwise your changes will be lost.

#### Notifications

Notifications are automatically sent to the administrator whenever data in Retain is moved. Moving data consists of system migration, exporting, forwarding, restoring, and publishing. By default, the address used is the address supplied during severs activation.

To spawn the notifications page, click on the 'Welcome' link at the top of the page.



When notifications are pending, the red flag on the mailbox is lifted.

Selecting the mailbox or welcome link opens a new notifications window.

Your Notifications	
Refresh Mark All Read Delete All	
When you perform actions such as forwarding, exporting, and restoring, you will receive notification messages here to let you know that the task has c	ompleted, and provide some information as to the success or failure of the task.
Today	
PDF: Retain Export Job "" Completed 11:39	
01-Aug-2011	
PDF: Retain Export Job = Completed 18:07	

The highlighted notifications are new, unread notifications and events. Selecting the event notification provides all the pertinent information regarding the event.

If there are any errors, a truncated error log is provided which details the error and the reason for the error.

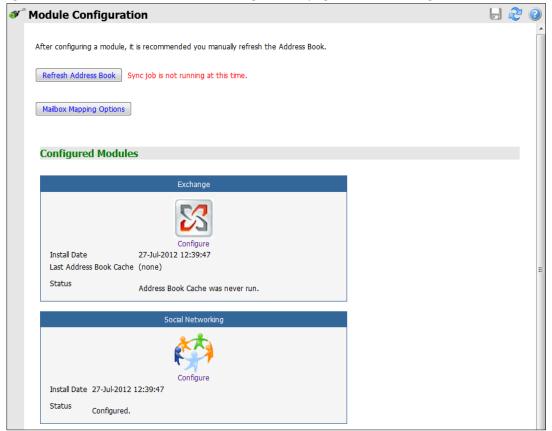
Notification		>
Retain Export Job Completed		
Your export job has complete	and is available for download.	
Document Title:		
Document Subtitle:		
Comments:		
Download Filename:	Export Set 01-Aug-2011 15:07:51	
Messages selected:	2	
Elapsed time (mm:ss):	00:04	
Page count:	12	
Errors processing message bo	dies: 0 : 0	
Errors processing attachment	: 0	
www	gwava.com • About GWAVA, Inc. • Powered by GWAVA Retain	
	© 2010 GWAVA, Inc. All rights reserved.	

#### Modules

Retain integrates and works with several different message systems. Data collection will not be available until one or more modules are configured for the Retain system.

<u>Note</u>: Depending on what license you have purchased for your Retain system, different modules may require an additional license. Check the licensing [link it] page to see what licenses you own. An Evaluation license, issued upon initial install, lasts 30 days and grants licenses for all modules

To configure a module, select the 'Module Configuration' page from the Configuration menu.



Each module link will open a new configuration window or tab. If the modules are not configured correctly, messages will not be collected. Profiles and Jobs are separated into module specific sections and no jobs can be configured without first configuring a module. Select the appropriate module(s) for your system by clicking on the module icon.

Certain settings or actions for both Exchange and GroupWise message systems must be configured before Retain can communicate with them. Make sure to complete or check the following changes and settings for each system before continuing. (Links lead to sections in the appendix.)

#### **Mailbox Mapping Options**

Mailbox mapping automates the merging of users' mailboxes that have both GroupWise and Exchange accounts, combining the GroupWise and Exchange archives under the same user in Retain. Retain merges the internal UID's of accounts to reflect the same user. After mailbox mapping has been activated, an immediate caching of the address books of both systems is required. Mailbox mapping is not permanent; however, "un-merging" must be performed manually via the Mailbox Merger / Splitter tool found on the 'bug' or 'about' screen. If a refresh of the mailboxes is not performed before users attempt to login or other activity is present on the server, the merge may fail, leaving extra entities created in the Retain archive which must be removed manually. Furthermore, the merge option is a once-off option. Please contact support for further options.

Mailbox Mapping Options
Mailbox Mapping Options
When running more than one email system, it is often desirable to automatically "map" two mailboxes from different email systems together.
Effectively, these two separate mailboxes become one virtual mailbox. Switching between the two is a simple matter of the user choosing the
mailbox from the current browse view. Also, rights to mailboxes become shared between the two, so the user need only log on as one mailbox
to have access to them all.
To achieve this, during address book caching, the administrator needs to have enabled at least one mailbox mapping option.
This <b>must</b> be enabled before the newly added email system is cached for the first time.
You may enable multiple address book mappings if you wish.
It is usually sufficient to enable mapping only for address book caching and only as a one-time procedure, unless both email systems will remain active. (For the latter case, enabling
for all processes, and for constant activity, is advised)
Mapping Enabled Never
Last time mappings were used never Reset
If you enable the XML File mapping option, you must provide the full path to the XML file, including the filename.
XML File Path
Active Mappings
Match the E-Mail Addresses
Custom Description Class

To map one mail system to another, both message systems, Exchange and GroupWise, must be functioning and have the desired accounts created on the system which allows for identification of the different users.

Accounts may be matched via email address, display names, or specified by an administrator supplied XML file. The Address book MUST be refreshed immediately in order to merge the users. The merge will not complete unless the Address Book is cached afterwards, and the merge cannot be re-run.

How the merge runs depends on the different users in the local system. If bothmessagesystems are to remain active, with users being added and removed from the system, it will be necessary to have mailbox mapping on all the time. Merged addresses are also required for the GroupWise to Exchange migration to function.

18

### **Exchange Module**

Retain supports:

- > A single forest Active Directory system, (Exchange and standard users)
- > An Exchange Resource Forest, (One Exchange Forest linked to one or multiple User Forests)
- > Office 365

Retain does NOT support multiple linked Exchange Forests. Ensure that the <u>Exchange settings</u> have been configured correctly before continuing the Exchange module setup.

The Exchange module must be configured in the Retain Server before any communication between Retain and an existing Exchangemessagesystem can occur. Open the Retain management page on the Retain Server, and select Module Configuration.

Overview	🥙 Module Configuration	y 🕐
Documentation System Log	After configuring a module, it is recommended you manually refresh the Address Book.	Í
Data Collection	Refresh Address Book Sync job is not running at this time.	
Management		
Users Groups	Mailbox Mapping Options	
Configuration	Unconfigured Modules	. 1
Server Configuration Module Configuration	Unconfigured Modules	1 II
Storage Manager Statistics Server Configuration	Exchange	
Licensing No modules configured. Use		
Module Configuration. At least one license has expired	Configure	E
or will be expiring soon.		
	Social Networking	
	Configure	

Select the 'Configure' option in the Exchange module. A new window or tab will open with the module configuration.

NOTE: Ensure that your Retain Server DNS is set to the same DNS server that your Exchange server uses. The Exchange module uses these DNS setting to auto discover critical information about Exchange stored in Active Directory and will not function correctly unless both systems are pointed to the same DNS server.

#### **Core Settings**

🔀 Exchange M	odule							🖯 🖓
								A
	c information is conf hey apply to your sy		nimum, the CORE SE	TTINGS and IM	PERSONATION ta	bs must be filled out com	pletely. Then, examine each	of the other tabs
Core Settings	Impersonation	Hosted Services	Exchange Forest	User Forests	Delegates			
- Core Setting	c							
core security	5							
Normally all of	these entries should	be enabled.						
		ng determines if this ates if users logging				y services during Maintena	ance.	
		ed, no jobs pertaining				encication system.		
Enable Addres	s Book Caching 📝							
Enable	Authentication 🔽							
	Enable Jobs 📝							

Normally all of the checkboxes on this tab are always left selected. It is rare that you would ever deselect any of them. Two cases where you might would be troubleshooting, (as instructed by Technical Support), and retiring an old email system.

The Enable Address Book Caching function allows Retain to regularly cache the online email systems address book and synchronize it with Retain. This is critical for administration, authentication, and archiving purposes. It is recommended to cache the Address Book once every 24 hours to keep the Retain storage system up to date. By default, maintenance is set to cache the Address Book once every 24 hours.

The Enable Authentication checkbox determines if end-user authentication is performed when the user logs into Retain. If it is deselected, the Retain system will NOT authenticate the user against the email system and the user will not be able to log in unless another authentication method is enabled.

The Enable Jobs checkbox determines if configured data retrieval jobs are ever passed to the Worker. Even if the individual job is fully configured and enabled, if this checkbox is switched off, no jobs configured for this module will be processed.

#### Impersonation

If the Impersonation and Core Settings tabs are not completely configured with the correct information, the hosted system will not be archived correctly.

xchange specific in determine if they			inimum, the CORE SE	TTINGS and IMP	ERSONATION	abs must be fi	lled out complete	ly. Then, exam	nine each of the ot	ier
Core Settings	Impersonation	Hosted Services	Exchange Forest	User Forests	Delegates					
-Impersonation -										
You will need to p The impersonation		mation regardless of ill the following requi		hiving a hosted o	r on premise E	change syste	n.			
The impersonation Is mail ena Has impers	n user MUST fulfi bled. onation rights gr	ll the following requi anted to all Exchang	irements:	-		«change syste	n.			
The impersonation Is mail ena Has impers Delegation	n user MUST fulfi bled. onation rights gr	ll the following requi anted to all Exchang granted to any Roon	irements: ge servers.	-		«change syste	n.			

#### **Hosted Services**

If the Exchange system is a hosted service system, Retain must be configured to support the hosted system setup.

Setting up the system is no more taxing than setting up a normal system, though a hosted system requires that the Impersonation and Core Settings tabs are completely and correctly filled out. Other tabs are only applicable depending on the settings of the hosted system, configure as appropriate.

to determine if they apply Core Settings Imper Hosted Services Archive supports hosted	Hosted Services		User Forests	PERSONATION Delegates	tabs must I	be filled out c	ompletely. The	en, examine each o	of the other tab
Hosted Services		Exchange Forest	User Forests	Delegates					
Archive supports hosted	id Evolution condens such as 1								
	generally do NOT provide LDAF					-		sing a Powershell sc	cript (see the
<ul> <li>If your service D</li> </ul>	fore proceeding). DOES provide LDAP access, und DOES NOT provide LDAP acces								- they will be

Mark the checkbox to enable Retain support for hosted Exchange services. No further configuration is required on this page.

IF the hosted system in use is an Office 365 system, further configuration on the Office 365 system is required. Because Office 365 Exchange Servers do not directly expose LDAP information, a Powershell script must run periodically to cache user and group information.

The Script requires PowerShell 2.0. Without this script, you cannot run jobs on Office365, or authenticate users.

Copyright © 2012 GWAVA Inc. All rights reserved.

#### Installation

- 1. Install PowerShell 2.0 (not needed for Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2 )
- 2. Install the Office 365 PowerShell cmdlets
- 3. Allow PowerShell script execution
- 4. Adapt and execute the "sync365.ps1" script provided by GWAVA
- 5. Automate the script to run regularly
- 6. Place the two resulting csv files in Retain
- 1. Install PowerShell 2.0

The appropriate version for the Windows system can be found here: <u>http://www.microsoft.com/powershell</u>

Windows 7 and 2008 R2 already come with PowerShell 2.0 ( Even if the version says 1.0, really it's 2.0 )

2. Install the Office 365 PowerShell cmdlets

The cmdlets can be found here:

http://onlinehelp.microsoft.com/en-us/office365-enterprises/hh124998.aspx

Two setup files are needed from that page:

- Microsoft Online Services Sign-In Assistant
- > Microsoft Online Services Module for Windows PowerShell

Execute them both in above order.

3. Allow PowerShell script execution

The Default Execution Policy is set to restricted, it can be viewed by entering this command in PowerShell: Get-ExecutionPolicy

The script provided by GWAVA must be run in PowerShell while running under Administrator rights.

#### Set-ExecutionPolicy RemoteSigned

4. Adapt and execute the "sync365.ps1" script provided by GWAVA

Select the "sync365.ps1" script provided by GWAVA in Tools/Exchange/Office 365 folder.

Right click on the script and select "modify".

This will open the script in the Microsoft Integrated Scripting Environment (ISE) editor.

At the top you can find 3 settings: \$User, \$PlainPassword, \$ExportBasePath.

- Set \$User to the UPN of an administrator account in Office 365.
- Set \$PlainPassword to the plain text password of the administrator account.
- Set \$ExportBasePath to a directory where the two resulting csv files will be saved.

Keep in mind, that you backslashes must be quoted, and a final backslash is not needed. Example:

\$ExportBasePath="C:\\Temp"

*Note: If it is unacceptable to set a password in clear text, please view the following solution:* <u>http://bsonposh.com/archives/338</u> -presents an alternative, which loads and saves encrypted credentials from file.

Execute the script by clicking the play button. This process can take a while for many users. Once the script has completed, a message indicating that the script is done should be displayed along the bottom status bar.

5. Automate it: to run automatically with Task Scheduler at least once a day

The method of automation is up to the administrator. However, the script needs to be run at least once a day, and, due to step 6, the files need to be copied to the Retain Server.

6. Get the files over to Retain Server

In Step 4 the ExportBasePath was set and should contain the two csv files. These files must be automatically copied to the RetainServer/WEB-INF/cfg directory once the script completes. That might require setting up a mapped network drive, or the acceptable solution for the local system. While the ExportBasePath may be mapped directly to the Retain Server, it is recommended to have the csv files copied afterwards.

Retain needs to know login information and existing domains before any archiving can be accomplished. Open the "Exchange Forest" tab and enter the login information.

	Impersonation	Hosted Services	Exchange Forest	User Forests	Delegates	
Exchange For	est					
Ignore this ta	b if you are runi	ning a hosted sys	tem.			
You MUST fill o	ut all of the entrie	s on this tab if you	are running an on-prer	nise Exchange sy	stem. Hosted se	rvices do not normally use this information.
Typically, you p	rovide the connec	tivity information fo	or a global catalog, and	a user that has f	ull access to Act	ive Directory.
Here are the sp	ecific requirement	s for this user:				
			ents specified on the Ir ectory involving the Ex			ter the username and password on that tab, not here.
You also provid	e a list of Active D	irectory DNs to sea	rch for users and group	05.		
Global Cata	og Host 192.168	.1.120				
Global Cata	log Port 3268					
Global Catalog	Security Plain Text	•				
	c=b, dc=company	g. dc=users,dc=co , dc=com	mpany,dc=com)			
Test Connec						
Test Connect						

Retain uses Active Directory extensively when integrating with Exchange. Its uses include: populating the address book, authentication, and access to the Exchange System.

There are settings required for Exchange, see the Exchange settings section in the appendix.

On the Exchange Forest tab, you configure all of the Active Directory information you need for an Exchange forest. There is no need to fill out any information on the User Forest tab unless the users exist in a separate forest from the Exchange Forest.

On the Exchange Forest tab, specify whether to use SSL or not for the Global Catalog Security, (strongly recommended), and the "search base". The search base is the LDAP path to the base of where Retain will start searching for valid Exchange users.

The Global Catalog Port defaults depend on whether SSL is used for security or not. SSL is STRONGLY recommended. (Default ports are 3268 for plain text, and 3269 for SSL.) Adjust as appropriate for your system.

24

You also must provide the credentials of an Active Directory user. This user is "special" It must have full read rights to Active Directory, be a mailbox-enabled, user, and be granted various Impersonation and Delegation rights. More on this is discussed in the <u>Exchange settings</u> section in the appendix. The username MUST be in UPN format, (user principal name).

This search base, in LDAP form, must be "high enough" in the tree to include ALL users, groups, and servers. Multiple search bases can be specified, though it often results in a less efficient interface. These are LDAP search bases which allow Retain to resolve all users, groups, and servers of interest in the forest.

After the Search Base has been added, test the connection to ensure information and connection works. The test performs a simple login to confirm that the user exists, the Exchange Server is reachable, and that the credentials are accepted. The test does not confirm impersonation or delegation rights necessary for the Service Account.



If the test results in an error stating: "FAILURE: User doesn't exist or is not mail enabled," It indicates that the user's mailbox is unavailable. A mailbox is not required for Retain to utilize the specified user. If the user Retain utilizes does not have a mailbox, this error may be ignored. However, if the user specified does have a mailbox, this may indicate connection issues.

The Exchange Forest tab is the only tab required by the Server and the Worker to archive mail from the Exchange system. The User Forest tab, however, is required for Exchange systems utilizing a resource forest, to allow the end user to log into Retain.

Resource Forest
Resource Forest
Select this checkbox if Exchange is running in a dedicated resource forest. You must then fill out information on the User Forests tab. If this checkbox is not selected, information on the User Forests tab is ignored.
Enable Resource Forest

If the system contains a Resource Forest, enable the checkbox on the Exchange Forest tab and save changes. If the Resource Forest checkbox is not enabled, the User Forests tab will be non-functional and all settings contained on that tab will be ignored. The checkbox must be unchecked in a single forest Active Directory deployment, but must be checked in a multiple forest Active Directory deployment.

Check all information to ensure that it is correct and save changes, and then configure the User Forest if required.

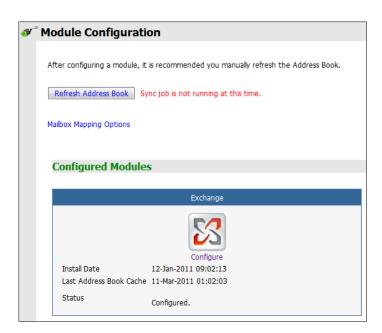
		/stem.				
Core Settings	Impersonation	Hosted Services	Exchange Forest	User Forests	Delegates	
		y for end-user auth	nentication.	,,	IODAI CATAIOG O	f that forest, and search base(s) capable of resolving all users.
Add User			nentication.			that forest, and search base(s) capable of resolving all users.
💥 User Fo	Forest	om	nentication.			that forest, and search base(s) capable of resolving all users.
Global Cata	r Forest	om	nentication.		iodai Catalog o	that forest, and search base(s) capable of resolving all users.

The User Forest must have an entry for each user forest attached to the system. Select the green '+' button and input the LDAP information required by the Forests' Global Catalog server: IP address or hostname, port, security, (SSL is STRONGLY recommended), and all search bases to include all the users. No administrative credentials are required. Each end user's provided credentials will be used on login.

Save all changes before closing the Exchange Module page.

Exchange specific information is configured here. At a minimum, the CORE SETTINGS and IMPERSONATION tabs must be filled out completely. Then, examine each of the other tabs to determine if they apply to your system.  Core Settings Impersonation Hosted Services Exchange Forest User Forests Delegates  Delegates  Ignore this tab if you are running a hosted system.  Archive can partially support the Delegates feature in Exchange. If a user uses Outlook to grant delegation rights to their mailbox to another user, the second user can have	change m	odule					Save Changes 🛃 🧔
Delegates Ignore this tab if you are running a hosted system.				nimum, the CORE SE	TTINGS and IMP	ERSONATION	tabs must be filled out completely. Then, examine each of the other t
Ignore this tab if you are running a hosted system.	Core Settings	Impersonation	Hosted Services	Exchange Forest	User Forests	Delegates	
	-						

After saving changes, return to the Retain server Module Configuration page, and trigger a refresh of the Address Book.



Depending on the size of the address book, it may take several minutes to return with information, but a successful configuration will return a correct address book cache date and no errors. The date should reflect the date of when the address book refresh was triggered.

The Status may show "Address Book Cache Never Run" or may list commonly misconfigured or missed items if the Refresh job fails.

Once the status is 'configured' and the Address Book has been cached, Retain can connect to and archive messages from the Exchange server. The system is ready to have workers, schedules, profiles, and jobs configured, and those options will now appear on the main administrative interface.

#### **Social Messaging**

The Social Messaging module allows Retain to archive Social Messaging communications from Facebook and Twitter. To configure the Social Messaging module, all that is required is to provide the connection information and address to the Retain for Social Messaging Gateway. If the RSM Gateway is not yet installed or available, a direct download link is provided on the last tab.

Connections to So	cial Messagin	g Gateway are configure	d here.	
Core Settings	Gateway	Download RSM OVA		
Download RS	M OVA			
You need to do	wnload , inst	all and configure the Ret	tain for Social Messaging OVA, which contains the proxy services needed to capture social media information.	

The "Enable Jobs" box must be checked to have any jobs function against the RSM Gateway. See the Retain for Social Media installation guide for more information.

🔅 S	ocial Messaging	6
	Connections to Social Messaging Gateway are configured here.	*
	Core Settings Gateway Download RSM OVA	
	Core Settings	
	Normally all of these entries should be enabled.	
	• If Enable Jobs is not enabled, no jobs pertaining to this module will be sent to Workers.	
	Enable Jobs 🗸	

On the Gateway tab, the connection information must be filled-out. Either place the host name or the IP Address of the RSM appliance and the connection port for the administration interface. Default is shown.

cial Mes	saging			r
Connections t	to Social Messag	ing Gateway are co	nfigured here.	
Core Settin	gs Gateway	Download RSM	OVA	
- Connectio	on			
You must f	ill out all of the	entries on this tab.		
Typically yo	ou provide the in	formation necessar	y to access the Social Messaging proxy.	
	-			
Host	127.0.0.1			
Port	80			
Security	Plain Text 🛛 👻			
User				
Password			(Password is not set)	
1 03377010				
1 8550014				

Security and user login credentials are required to connect to the RSM. The user must have administration rights to gather data from the Gateway. By default the user account is 'tech' with the password 'retain'.

Save changes and the module is configured.

28

#### **GroupWise Module**

The GroupWise module must be fully configured before Retain can archive or communicate with the GroupWise mail system. Retain must be provided with an IP address and port of a readily accessible Post Office (fast access), appropriate login credentials, and a trusted application key.

The GroupWise module page opens first with the Core Settings.

#### **Core Settings**

🕏 GroupWise Module	H 🍣
GroupWise specific information is configured here. At a minimum, the CORE SETTINGS and SOAP tabs must filled out completely.	
Core Settings SOAP LDAP Proxy	
Core Settings	
Normally all of these entries should be enabled.	
<ul> <li>Enable Address Book Caching determines if this module caches address book entries from its directory services during Maintenance.</li> <li>Enable Authentication indicates if users logging into Retain should be able to use the module's authentication system.</li> <li>If Enable Jobs is not enabled, no jobs pertaining to this module will be sent to Workers.</li> </ul>	
Enable Address Book Caching? 📝	
Enable Authentication?	
Enable Jobs?	

Normally all of the checkboxes on this tab are always left selected. It is rare that you would ever deselect any of them. Two cases where you might would be troubleshooting, (as instructed by Technical Support), and retiring an old email system.

The Enable Address Book Caching function allows Retain to regularly cache the online email systems address book and synchronize it with Retain. This is critical for administration, authentication, and archiving purposes. It is recommended to cache the Address Book once every 24 hours to keep the Retain storage system up to date. By default, maintenance is set to cache the Address Book once every 24 hours.

The Enable Authentication checkbox determines if end-user authentication is performed when the user logs into Retain. If it is deselected, the Retain system will NOT authenticate the user against the email system and the user will not be able to log in unless another authentication method is enabled.

The Enable Jobs checkbox determines if configured data retrieval jobs are ever passed to the Worker. Even if the individual job is fully configured and enabled, if this checkbox is switched off, no jobs configured for this module will be processed.

#### SOAP

Provide the POA Host Name and SOAP port. IP addresses are acceptable, but host names are preferred as IP addresses may change. SSL is supported, but comes at the price of speed, and will slow down the archiving process. Create a Trusted Application key for Retain, either manually from Console One for GroupWise 8.x and higher, or via the provided Key Generator provided and linked from the page. For instructions, see the <u>trusted app key section in the appendix</u>.

	3	
roupMico spocific informat	tion is configured here. At a minimum, the CORE SETTINGS and SOAP tabs must filled out completely.	
Core Settings SOAP	LDAP Proxy	
Core Securitys SOAP	LUAP Ploxy	
-Trusted Application Ke	ey Generation	
Retain uses the Trusted	Application feature of GroupWise to access the user mailboxes. You must generate a trusted application key to continue.	
The Trusted Application	key generation requires a Windows machine with a connection to the GroupWise Primary Domain.	
Alternatively, GroupWise	8 SP1 and above include the ability to generate trusted applications on any platform running ConsoleOne.	
<ul> <li>Download the key</li> <li>Run the key gene</li> <li>Paste the key gene</li> </ul>		
Trusted Key Name	Retain	
Trusted Application Key:	: 1274F00111E00000A5BFEDA2F08107161274F00211E00000ADDCE493233A1E86	
GroupWise SOAP Acces Retain accesses the Grou POA Host Name 192.16 SOAP Port 7191 Enable SSL?	upWise message store via the SOAP protocol which needs to be enabled at all Post Offices in ConsoleOne. Retain needs a initial default POA to gather the inform	ation from.
Retain accesses the Grou POA Host Name 192.16 SOAP Port 7191	upWise message store via the SOAP protocol which needs to be enabled at all Post Offices in ConsoleOne. Retain needs a initial default POA to gather the inform 58.1.104	ation from.
Retain accesses the Grou POA Host Name 192.16 SOAP Port 7191 Enable SSL?	upWise message store via the SOAP protocol which needs to be enabled at all Post Offices in ConsoleOne. Retain needs a initial default POA to gather the inform 58.1.104	ation from.

The SOAP access information must be provided, and the connection tested and verified before the system can connect. After providing the required information, click the 'Test Connection' button. The results are displayed. A successful result must be reached before Retain can archive messages from GroupWise.



If mail server Redirection is required for mail servers which are not contained on the local WAN and must have the connection addresses manually specified, the appropriate information may be modified in the redirection table. Most installations will not require any modification.

#### LDAP

oupWise Module			R
roupWise specific information is configured here. At	t a minimum, the CORE SETTINGS and SOAP tabs	must filled out completely.	
Core Settings SOAP LDAP Proxy			
E-Mail Address Based Login			
	unctionality - the LDAP Authentication option in Gro	. An LDAP query will be performed, and the password will be matched against the LDAP directory oupWise at the Post Office level largely duplicates this functionality. However, if you want to allow	
<ul> <li>The email address attribute in eDirectory is</li> </ul>		want to index this field. Consult the user manual for details on how to do this. I should specify a user with rights to all properties in the LDAP Server.	
<ul> <li>The email address attribute in eDirectory is</li> </ul>	e in LDAP form, not eDirectory form. The Admin DM		
<ul> <li>The email address attribute in eDirectory is</li> <li>The Admin DN, and Search DN need to be</li> </ul>	e in LDAP form, not eDirectory form. The Admin DP		
<ul> <li>The email address attribute in eDirectory is</li> <li>The Admin DN, and Search DN need to be Enable EMail Address lookup?</li> </ul>	e in LDAP form, not eDirectory form. The Admin DP		
The email address attribute in eDirectory is     The Admin DN, and Search DN need to be     Enable EMail Address lookup?     LDAP Server (DNS/IP)	e in LDAP form, not eDirectory form. The Admin Dr 127.0.0.1 389		
The email address attribute in eDirectory is     The Admin DN, and Search DN need to be     Enable EMail Address lookup?     LDAP Server (DNS/IP)     LDAP Port (usually 389 or 636)	e in LDAP form, not eDirectory form. The Admin Dr 127.0.0.1 389		
The email address attribute in eDirectory is     The Admin DN, and Search DN need to be     Enable EMail Address lookup?     LDAP Server (DNS/IP)     LDAP Port (usually 389 or 636)     Use SSL?	e in LDAP form, not eDirectory form. The Admin Dr  127.0.0.1  389  cn=admin,o=beginfinite		

LDAP may be used for individual users wishing to access their respective archives. If LDAP is setup and desired to be used for Retain user authentication, it must be fully configured in the GroupWise module.

Utilizing LDAP allows users to log into their respective archives using the user's full email address. This authentication requires that the email attribute be marked indexed in ConsoleOne.

#### Proxy

GroupWise Module		3	2	
GroupWise specific information is configured h Core Settings SOAP LDAP Proxy	rere. At a minimum, the CORE SETTINGS and SOAP tabs must filled out completely.			*
Proxy				
	ort, which allows users to access mallboxes which they have proxy access to. For performance reasons, proxy access is verified when the user accesses ed, for a period of days that you specify. This does mean that if the proxy access was revoked in GroupWise, several days may pass before access is rev but is not recommended.			
Enable support for GroupWise Proxy 📃				

Users who have been given proxy to another account in GroupWise may be granted access to proxy accounts in the Retain archive as well. For performance reasons, Retain caches proxy verifications for a period of days.(Default is '7' days.) Revocation of proxy access might not be reflected immediately in Retain. The caching period may be reduced or even disabled, (a value of '0' disables caching), but this is not recommended.

## Archiving/Data Collection – About Workers, Profiles, Schedules, and Jobs

Getting data into the archive is the core functions of Retain. As such, sub-functions have been broken out to give you as much flexibility as possible in deciding your archive policy. Your archiving policy will cover several points:

- What to archive (jobs)
  - Includes what message server(s) to collect data from.
- What worker
- When will the data be collected (schedule)
- How to collect the data will cover (profile)
  - Types of items or users to archive.
  - Date range of items to be archived.
  - o Avoiding redundant data collection.
  - Utilizing storage flags to achieve 100% retention.
  - Whether to store attachments.
  - o Advanced criteria, such as attachment names, or folder locations.

#### **Retain Job components:**

#### Schedule

The Schedule is the time framework that is set for the job to run on and provides the choice of how often, and when, the job is run. Single time, (job runs once), or a recurring time frame are available.

#### Profile

The Profile dictates which kinds of files to retrieve from the message system. All message system items are selectable to be archived, but you may also specify time periods, exclude folders or subjects, and how the data is stored.

The Profile also has a very important function, duplicate checking. This keeps the Retain system from storing multiple instances of the same message. Make sure you check and read the section on Purge (GroupWise), Retention (GroupWise), and Item Store (Exchange/GroupWise) flags.

#### Worker

The worker is the module of Retain that actually pulls the data from the message system servers. The Worker contacts the Retain Server and gathers information on which jobs are associated with it, when to start them, and which items to get. Workers can only run one job at a time.

#### Jobs

The Jobs section is where the Worker, Profile, and Schedule are all brought together and associated into a comprehensive configuration by allowing the user to tie their configuration to a mailbox server, selected user list, or distribution list. The Worker will not start archiving anything until a Job is created is bound to a Worker, Schedule, and Profile. There is no limit on the amount of Jobs, Schedules, Profiles, or Workers that a Retain Server can be configured to use

# Schedules

Schedules define **WHEN** to perform the data collection as defined in a **JOB**. A Job defines what **SCHEDULE**, **PROFILE** and **WORKER** to use.

- > You can create as many schedules as you need.
- Schedules have no functionality until they are associated with one or more JOBs.
- > They can be shared across multiple **JOBs**.
- > You cannot DELETE a schedule that is currently associated with a **JOB**.
- Schedules can be recurring or one-time.

SINGLE schedules are configured with one start time, and one date.

To keep jobs from queuing up to the worker, select the box to do not resend a job that has an elapsed start time. Otherwise, a job will queue up on the worker if a previous job has not yet completed, causing the new job to start as soon as the current job is complete or terminated.

📱 Schedules 🚽 🖓	2				
default Add Schedule	-				
Edit Schedule       No jobs are associated with this schedule.         Remove Schedule					
Schedule Name default Schedule Frequency Single					
This job will run only once, at the time specified below, unless an error occurs. If an occur occurs, the job will be retried unless you select the checkbox below.					
Date: Aug 💌 13 💌 2008 💌 Time: 16 💌 36 💌					
If time assigned for job start has elapsed, don't resend job					

RECURRING schedules are configured using a start and interrupt time, and which days to start on.

Schedule Name	full run job		
Schedule Frequency	Recurring .	-	
Sunday Monday			
V Tuesday	S	tart Job at:	01 🚽 :00
Wednesday	м	laximum job duration	22 🚽 hours
Thursday	D	o not interrupt job, even when duration expires	$\checkmark$
🔽 Friday			
Saturday			

Choose when on which days you want this schedule to trigger a job.

You may specify maximum job duration. If the job runs longer than the time limit you set, it will be interrupted. For cases where you do not want the job to be interrupted – for example, with a job you know will last longer than 22 hours, you may prevent the schedule from interrupting the job.

#### Don't forget to "Save Changes".

## **Profiles**

A profile assigned to a job tells the system what to archive. Message types, status, date ranges, excluding or including specific users, private or public folders or both, and redundancy check settings are all configured under the profile.

The profile defaults to collecting all data, with no date restrictions. After Retain has finished collecting data the first time, you'll want to narrow the date range and criteria considerably, or pay a high price in performance. Each module has a specific profile page, but different profile pages will not display unless multiple modules have been configured. Each module's profile is explained below.

#### **Exchange Profile**

After the Exchange Module has been configured, the Exchange Profile will be available for configuration. If an Exchange Profile is not configured, jobs cannot be run against the Exchange system.

😹 Retain 🦯		Language English	✓ Welcome, admin   Abou	t   Status & Updates   Logout
Overview	📛 Profiles			6 😌 🖯
Documentation Search Messages Audit Log System Log	exchange	Add Profile		*
Data Collection Schedules Profiles		Edit Profile	Associated Jobs • new exchange	
Exchange GroupWise Workers		Remove Prof	ìle	
	Profile exchange loaded. Profile Name	exchange		_
Users Groups	Core Settings Message	Settings Scope Mi	scellaneous Advanced	
Deletion Management Configuration	Profile Functions Enable Archiving (store	macrogat in Patoin)		
Server Configuration Module Configuration Storage Manager Stubbing Server Licensing	Enable Archiving (store	messages in Ketain)		

Click on 'Add Profile' and provide a profile name, or select an already existing profile to access the configuration tabs. All changes made on this page must be saved by selecting the 'save changes', disk **icon, at the top right of the page. Tabs may be changed and navigated through without affecting new** settings, but any move to another page will require saving, or abandoning the changes made.

#### **Core Settings**

The core settings consist of an enabled/disabled option which must be enabled for any jobs based on this profile to archive anything.

#### Manage Settings

Retain can archive and select specific types of mail and Exchange system items to be archived. The Manage Settings tab provides access to manage those settings.

Core Settings Message Settings Scope Miscellaneous Advanced			
Mailbox Type			
You can choose to store items only from User mailboxes or from Room / Equipment resources.			
Vusers Room / Equipment			
Itom Tuno			
Item Type			
By default, Retain stores every type of message. You can restrict this.			
🕼 Mail 🕼 Appointment 🕼 Note 🕼 Task 🕼 Voice Message			
Item Source			
Messages are classified in one of these categories. You may restrict the storage of messages if desired.			
Received Sent Draft Posted			
Message Status			
You can restrict the storage of messages based upon the setting of various status flags			
Read is     Private is     Personal is     Confidential is       Doesn't matter     ✓     Doesn't matter     ✓			

The Mailbox type specifies whether to include or exclude the available types of mailboxes. Because there can be multiple profiles and jobs, it may be advantageous to archive the Users and Room / Equipment mailboxes separately as needed and appropriate for the system.

The Item Type option specifies the different types of messages found in Exchange that can be archived, and allows the exclusion of or inclusion of the different individual types.

The Item Source option allows administrators to exclude or include messages that have not yet been sent or received, or posted.

The Message Status allows messages which have or have not been read or opened, or marked private or confidential to be archived. The different options in the dropdown menu are as shown.

Doesn't matter 🛛 👻			
Doesn't matter			
True			
False			

#### Scope

The Scope tab dictates how pervasive the attached archiving jobs are, and what kind of duplicate checking is done, or not done, in the Retain system.

The Date Range instructs Retain to scan for, and archive, messages after, or before, a certain date. This is useful if only specific chunks or areas of mail are to be archived.

The duplicate check either scans for all messages, or instructs Retain to only look for messages which are newer than the Item Store Flag, which is a time-stamp on the system. All messages younger than the time stamp will be archived by Retain if the item store flag is utilized, but Retain will ignore all messages which are older.

NOTE: Unlike GroupWise, Exchange does not ensure any compliance when scanning end user mailboxes; users may freely delete their email. The Item store flag does not prevent mail deletion. Only Journaling and archiving a journaling mailboxes, guarantees all items have been archived.

Core Settings Message Settings	Scope Miscellaneous	Advanced
Date Range to Scan		
All Messages (ignore date)	•	
		nent. Defining how the Worker determines new items (so it
may skip sending them to the Server) is publish all messages unless you are prim Try to publish all messages (SLOW)	ing the system for the fir	ce factor. Using the item store flag is recommended. Never st time.
Try to publish all messages (SCOW)	▼	
Set Storage Flags		
You normally want to advance the Iten to.	) Store flag after a job is	run. However if you run overlapping jobs, you might not want
Item Store Flag		

It is recommended that the first job be allowed to scan for all mail that is desired to be archived, with the duplicate check set to 'publish all messages'. Afterwards, it is recommended to have the duplicate check look for the Item Store Flag, and only check for new mail in the system.

#### Miscellaneous

The Miscellaneous tab allows access to particular settings detailing how messages are stored and what is archived. Attachments, message information such as the internet headers, and how the data is stored and named, (by folders, year, or year and month), dictate not only the message store structure, but affect the storage size.

Miscellaneous options also allow for the archiving of the 'recoverable items'. To enable checking and archiving of the 'Recoverable Items' for compliance reasons, select the checkbox next to the option.

Core Settings Message Settings Scope Miscellaneous Advanced					
Miscellaneous					
Items from All Folders ONLY tems from folders listed below All folders EXCEPT three listed below					
You can save disk space by restricting attachment storage.					
Store all attachments					
<ul> <li>Don't store any attachments, other than the message</li> </ul>					
You may choose to store and index the Internet Headers. This exacts a performance penalty. However, it may be necessary for your compliance policy.					
Store/index Internet Headers					
Note: The following options can dramatically slow down archiving and increase disk space utilization.					
Include user's archive mailbox					
Include user's recoverable items					
Include Public Folders(exhaustive)					
You may store Journaling Mailboxes in one flat folder, or partition them by year and/or month.					
Store in one folder					
Store by year (yyyy)					
Store by year and month (yyyyMM)					

#### Advanced

ou may a	add advanced c	riteria such as s	pecific attach	nment names,	sizes, subject h	ere.	
\dd							
Delete	Subject	is	*				
	Subject Sender Recipient						
	Size Attachment Name						
Folder S	scope						
							clude. Choose a folder include all subfolders in
ie patter	<ul> <li>A state of the second se</li></ul>	er (you may nav	re multiple su	IDIOICIEIS WILLI	une ( demniter, -	anu whether to	include all subtolders in

If you want to be more specific as to what to dredge or not to dredge, add the criteria here. Each line will be *logically AND*-ed together.

Think "Dredge all items where the following is true:" Criteria A and Criteria B and Criteria C etc

You may select based on:

- Subject
- > Sender
- Recipient
- > Size
- Attachment Name

Whether they are equal to, not equal to, whether they contain or do not contain the item you specify.

This gives you great flexibility and granularity. It allows you to customize dredges and retention for many different groups, or even individuals.

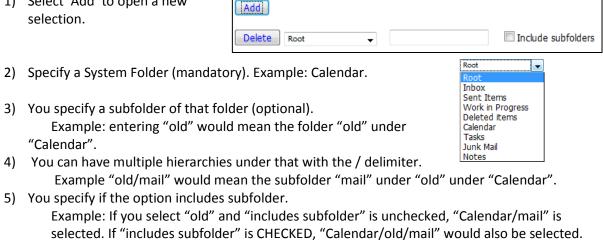
#### **Folder Scope**

By default we dredge items from all folders. You can specify one or more inclusions or exclusions. Your choices are: Items from All Folders

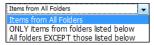
- Dredge everything
- Dredge only these listed folders
- Dredge everything EXCEPT these listed folders

#### How to specify the list of folders to dredge/exclude:

1) Select 'Add' to open a new selection.



Γ	Folder Scope
	Normally, you want to include all folders in your scan. However, you may have specific reasons to include or exclude folders. Choose a folder root, an optional subfolder (you may have multiple subfolders with the \ delimiter, and whether to include all subfolders in the pattern.
	ONLY items from folders listed below
	Add
	Delete Calendar



#### **GroupWise Profile**

🗯 Retain 🔎	Language English Velcome, admin   About   Status & Updates   Logout
Overview	🖱 Profiles 🛛 🖯 🗞 🥝
Documentation Search Messages Audit Log System Log Data Collection Schedules Profiles Exchange GroupWise	david only       Groupwise       Add Profile       Associated Jobs       Edit Profile       new job       Remove Profile
Workers ⊮ Jobs	Profile Groupwise loaded.
Management	Profile Name Groupwise
Users Groups Deletion Management	Core Settings Message Settings Scope Miscellaneous Advanced Profile Functions
Configuration Server Configuration Module Configuration Storage Manager Stubbing Server Licensing	The normal function of Retain is to archive mail. However, GroupWise 8 introduces the capability to "Stub" items so they appear to be in the original malibox, but are really stored in Retain. This can save disk space. You may enable Archiving and Stubbing separately or together, depending on what you think your users would like. We tend to recommend you do NOT stub Calendar Items, because it can lead to confusing results if they are rescheduled or reassigned. (Most Calendar Items aren't terribly large anyway). You may safely enable stubbing on a GroupWise 7 post office, however the functionality will be ignored, and the item will not be stubbed. If Enable Archiving (store messages in Retain) Enable Stubbing (if items are already archived) If Do not stub Calendar Items (Appointments, Notes, and Tasks) Stub only items exceeding a size threshold 2048 Size Threshold (bytes)
	Archive Mark You can request Retain to mark items as archived. You may view the status at the Windows client as a custom column. This does slightly degrade performance. Mark emails as archived

#### **Core Settings**

The Profile Functions tell the Retain Server what to do with the mail it archives from the GroupWise system. If Archiving is not enabled, mail will not be archived by Retain.

#### Stubbing

Before enabling stubbing, make sure you understand the way stubbing works and how that will work in your system because **once enabled**, **you cannot reverse the stubbing process**. Stubbing, (requires GroupWise 8), allows Retain to replace archived messages and items in the GroupWise Post office with 'stubs' that link back to the full message or item in the Retain Archive. End users should not notice a difference as they have transparent access to the stubbed item through the GroupWise Post office. The stub behaves much like the native item is still in the GroupWise system.

**Stubbing CANNOT be reversed.** Plan your system and understand the positive and negative sides to Stubbing before you continue. To use stubbing, it is strongly recommended that the GroupWise system be at least 8.02HP1. Previous versions of GroupWise do not contain critical stability fixes.

Why stubbing is good:

- Save Disk space. Mail can be removed from the system without being 'deleted'.
- Users have easy access to items stored in Retain
- > Transparent access, no need to login to Retain for common tasks.

Why stubbing may not work for your system:

- Stubbing CANNOT be reversed. (Once a message is stubbed, it cannot be returned to the same position in the system)
- > User training for stubbed items may be necessary due to decreased access speed
- No method for protecting stubs from deletion in the GroupWise client. (Recreation is difficult and complicated.)
- Non-mail items should not be stubbed. (Calendar and appointment items behave erratically when rescheduled).
- Stub items are NOT COMPATIBLE with third party API's. These applications view the stubs as posted items only, with no text or attachments.
- Mobile, Web, IMAP, and POP3 clients will only see posted empty items, not actual contents.

Determine the correct option for your system. If you wish to enable Stubbing, you need to install and configure the Stubbing Server as well. Refer to the install guide for your specific OS, and the <u>Stubbing</u> <u>Server</u> section for configuration. Stubbing can only be active for items which have been archived by Retain.

**Calendar Items should not be stubbed unless necessary,** as this can cause erratic behavior if archived items are rescheduled. If you wish to only stub large items in your Post Office, you may set a size threshold. Any item larger than the specified size will be stubbed. If this option is not set, all messages will be stubbed, regardless of size.

#### **Archive Mark**

Some users may opt to use the Archive Mark in GroupWise for messages that have been archived by Retain. The archive mark is a custom flag and may be modified, therefore is not secure and should not be used for compliance. Archive Mark slightly degrades job performance. Check the check box to enable Archive Mark for the selected profile.

When the Archive Mark is active, Retain creates a custom column for mail, called "RetainArchived" which users and administrators may add to their GroupWise clients to view mail which has been archived. The RetainArchived column indicates an archived mail item by displaying a '1' in the message row, while remaining blank when the message is not archived.

	From	Subject	Date 🔻 RetainArchived
) 🖂	Suzie Wathen	cool lightning	8/25/2008 4:21 PM
$\sim$	Steve Orchard	Old Ladies' Noggins	8/25/2008 4:17 PM 1

To add the column, in the client: highlight desired mailbox or folder, right-click on columns header, select **More Columns**, select **RetainArchived**, and select **Add**.

#### Message Settings:

- > Mailbox Type: You can restrict the type of mailbox to users, resources or both.
- > Message Item Type:Select what type of items within these mailboxes to dredge.
- > Message Source: Select whether incoming, outgoing, draft or posted items get dredged.
- Message Status: You can decide whether to dredge an item based on its GroupWise flags.
   Default is to dredge all items, regardless of flag status.

Core Settings Message Settings Scope Miscellaneous Advanced				
Mailbox Type				
You can choose to store items only from Users or from Resources.				
Users Resources				
- Item Type				
By default, Retain stores every type of message. You can restrict this.				
🗹 Mail 🗹 Appointment 🗹 Note 🗹 Task 🗹 Phone Message				
Item Source				
Messages are classified in one of these categories. You may restrict the storage of messages if desired.				
V Received V Sent V Draft V Posted				
Massage Status				
Message Status				
You can restrict the storage of messages based upon the setting of various status flags in GroupWise.				
Opened is Doesn't matter 💌 Read is Doesn't matter 💌 Private is Doesn't matter 💌				

By default, all items are selected for collection.

#### Scope

Core Settings Message Settings Scope Miscellaneous Advanced				
Date Range to Scan				
All Messages (ignore date)				
Duplicate Check				
Retain only stores a single instance of each message and attachment. Defining how the Worker determines new items (so it may skip sending them to the Server) is an important performance factor. Using the retention or purge flag choices are the fastest choices, if these are options. Never publish all messages unless you are priming the system for the first time.				
Try to publish all messages (SLOW)				
Set Storage Flags				
If you are using either the Purge or Retention features in GroupWise, you probably want these to be advanced automatically as items are stored so users may delete messages in their mailbox that have been stored by Retain. The Item Store flag is of similar function, stored in Retain itself, but cannot prevent users fom deleting item. It is most useful in conjunction with GWAVA Reload or in use with multiple overlapping jobs.				
🗹 Retention Flag 🔲 Purge Flag 🔲 Item Store Flag				

#### **Date Range**

The Date Range determines which message items are collected, depending on the date of the message. While the default is to collect all messages, regardless of dates, the administrator will **want and need** to change this. Dredging all messages makes sense **only** when you are collecting data for the very first run (priming the archive). On a day-to-day basis, however, the performance toll will be intolerable.

For instance, you may want to dredge everything once and then make a daily or weekly dredge for items that are 'n' days old. These limited-scope dredges will run much more quickly and they will save you bandwidth. See below under "duplicate check.

Sometimes, you might just want to dredge items that fall within a specific date range. Specify that here.

#### **Duplicate Check**

[	Duplicate Check
	Retain only stores a single instance of each message and attachment. Defining how the Worker determines new items (so it may skip sending them to the Server) is an important performance factor. Using the retention or purge flag choices are the fastest choices, if these are options. Never publish all messages unless you are priming the system for the first time.
	Try to publish all messages (SLOW)

Retain is a single-instance-storage system. In other words, any given message is stored only once, to eliminate wasted disk space. Therefore, there are mechanisms in place to check for duplicates as messages are dredged and stored. The Retain Worker dredges the messages, sends them across a network link to the Retain Server and the Retain Server stores them in the database.

Eliminating duplicates will save network bandwidth and it will eliminate wasted disk space.

The Retain Server will check for duplicates before a message is stored. However, sending megabytes of messages and attachments to the Retain Server only to have them discarded because "they are already here" wastes processor time and the network bandwidth between the Worker and the Server. Therefore, you want to be able to do some checking at the Worker side.

If you are using the Reload<sup>™</sup> integration, the item store flag is the only duplicate check flag that will work. The Retention and Purge flags will not work against a Reload backup.

In this section, you will tell the worker how to decide whether to dredge a message. Here are your options:

Try to publish all messages (SLOW) Ignore all messages older than retention flag (fastest) Ignore all messages older than purge flag (fastest) Publish all messages newer than last stored message (fast)

"Reload" is a trade mark of GWAVA Inc., 100 Alexis Nihon, Suite 500, Saint Laurent, Quebec H4M 2P1

Publish All Messages:	No duplicate checking.		
	<ul> <li>Every message is sent to the Server.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>The Server is responsible for duplicate checking.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>If there are duplicates, the Server will discard them.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>This is the slowest option.</li> </ul>		
Use SmartPurge Flag:	Uses the GroupWise flags to determine the newest message.		
	<ul> <li>Fastest option.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Compares time stamp of the flag to run time.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Ignores messages older than flag's time stamp.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>It is NOT a usable option when dredging from Reload.</li> </ul>		
Use Retention Flag	functions very similarly to the SmartPurge flag.		
	See below for a comparison		
Use Item Store Flag	Use an internally stored timestamp.		
	<ul> <li>Similar in function to GroupWise Retention/Purge flags.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Determines last message stored.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Fast option but not as fast as Retention/Purge flags.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Ignores messages older than flag's time stamp.</li> </ul>		

#### Set Flags:

<u>As discussed previously</u>, Retain can use the SmartPurge, Retention, and/or the Item Store flags. Select which flags should be "advanced" (in their timestamp values) as items are archived by this profile. Normally, the Retention flag is the one most administrators will wish to use.

# NOTE: Generally, if you're using a backup system that leverages SmartPurge, like most backup software, (such as GWAVA Reload), does, you will not want to touch that flag.

#### About GroupWise's Smart Purge and Retention Flags

The SmartPurge, Retention, and Item Store flags all perform similar functions. The SmartPurge and Retention flags are stored internally in the GroupWise post office on a per-mailbox basis. The Item Store flag is stored by the Retain Server internally in Retain's own configuration database.

Each can be thought of as simply a "timestamp" indicating the last time data was retrieved by a 3<sup>rd</sup> party application. There are a few subtle differences between the three flags, which are discussed below.

The SmartPurge flag was introduced by Novell in GroupWise version 6.0. With **SmartPurge** enabled in GroupWise,

- > The flag is a timestamp, stored in the user's mailbox.
- > Items older than the timestamp can be deleted freely.
- > Items newer than the timestamp cannot be deleted.
- A 3<sup>rd</sup> party application, such as backup software can retrieve and/or set this timestamp value. GroupWise never changes the timestamp value.
- The initial purpose of this was for backup software. Backup software can either manually or automatically, (via the SMS TSAGW component of GroupWise), advance this timestamp once all items are backed up. The backup software can also use this timestamp to "know" that all items older than this timestamp have already been backed up, and can be skipped.
- > Retain can use this flag to skip archived items, and automatically advance it as well. However, in

practice, you'll rarely want to do this, because backup software, including GWAVA Reload, already uses this flag. There's no way to "share" the flag.

Because makers of retention and compliance software wanted a flag of their own, one that wasn't shared with the backup software SmartPurge flag, the Retention flag was introduced by Novell in GroupWise 6.5.1.

In almost all respects, the Retention flag is exactly identical in purpose and function to the SmartPurge flag. Like the SmartPurge flag, it is stored internally, and is primarily used to prevent premature deletion, and to skip previously stored messages. In fact, these are so identical in purpose, in theory virtually all backup software could switch to using the Retention flag, and all Retention software to the SmartPurge flag, and you'd notice almost no difference. The primary difference is simply it's a different value, used by different vendors.

There are some *small* distinctions:

- > It's enabled and configured in a different location in ConsoleOne.
- It cannot be enabled or configured until a Trusted Application (like Retain) is installed and specifically requests it be made available.
- The SmartPurge flag is turned on/off globally. The Retention flag can be configured at the Domain, PO, or user level.

Most customers using Retain will want to use the Retention flag. It's logical and consistent to do so, and avoids conflict with backup software. It is recommended that you use this flag unless there is a compelling reason not to. A few possibilities are discussed below.

Retain can use the SmartPurge and Retention flags. In addition, a third flag, the Item Store flag is also available for use. The Item Store flag is similar to the other flags, but has some important differences:

- It's stored in the Retain Server's configuration database, instead of in GroupWise. This rarely matters much, but it does mean that the existence and storage of the flag is not dependent on the existence of the mailbox.
- > Just like the SmartPurge and Retention flags, it can be used by Retain to skip previously archived messages, enormously increasing performance.
- Unlike the SmartPurge and Retention flags, it <u>cannot</u> be used to prevent users from prematurely deleting message items before they are stored by Retain. Given this severe limitation, the administrator might well wonder why this flag is useful...

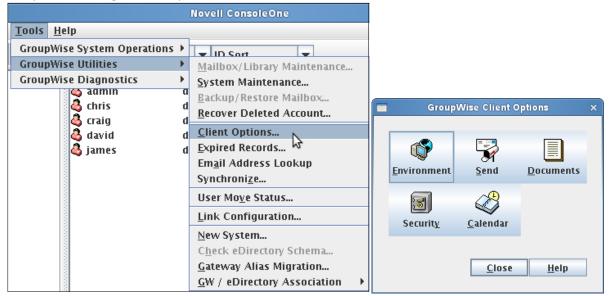
It's true that you cannot prevent premature deletion using the Item Store flag. However, there are two scenarios where the Item Store flag becomes useful or even essential:

- The first is if for some reason the administrator needs to run multiple jobs or profiles on mailboxes that overlap. In this case, two separate flags are needed so the two different jobs can keep track of where (or more accurately WHEN) to continue archiving from. Admittedly, this is a rare scenario, but without a separate flag, your options would be severely limited.
- More commonly, consider the case of GWAVA Reload. Customers have expressed interest in using the backups created by GWAVA Reload to feed Retain, avoiding unnecessary network bandwidth utilization. But you cannot do this with the built in SmartPurge or Retention flags!
  - GWAVA Reload already uses the SmartPurge flags, and date ranges and profiles between Reload and Retain don't necessarily (and in fact rarely do) match.

- The Retention flag would be perfect, but Retain isn't able to change the Retention flag. Or more accurately, it is changing it <u>on the Reload box</u>, not on the live GroupWise server. Hence, the changes will never be synchronized with GroupWise, leading to the disastrous results of:
  - Users will never again be able to delete e-mail from the live GroupWise system.
  - Retain will rescan the entire post office every night, because Reload will make a new backup, with an unchanged Retention flag!
- > The situation is resolved by using the internal Item Store flag.

#### Setting up SmartPurge and Retention flags in GroupWise 7

(Smart Purge Setup under GroupWise 8 is similar.) Setup for both flags is accomplished in ConsoleOne:



- 1) Go into ConsoleOne
- 2) Select your domain or post office
- 3) Go to Tools | GroupWise Utilities | Client Options
- 4) Select Environment and the 'Cleanup' tab

Environment Options: dom 🛛 🗙					
Retention         Junk Mail         Calendar         Teaming         Tutorial         Address Book           General         Client Access         Views         File Location         Cleanup         Appearance					
Mail and Phone          • Manual Delete and Archive       • Auto-Delete after:       • Auto-Archive after:       • 30       • days       • Auto-Archive after:       • 30       • days       • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
Appointment, Task, and Note             Manual Delete and Archive          Auto-Delete after:          Auto-Archive after:          Auto-Archive after:          Auto-Archive after:         Auto-Archi					
Empty Trash       Manual       Automatic after:         7					
Do not purge items until they are backed up Prompt user hefore purging Perform maintenance purges on caching/remote Force synchronization of cleanup options to caching/remote Restore Default Settings					
<u>QK</u> <u>Cancel</u> <u>Help</u>					

Once here, SmartPurge is set up like this:

Environment Options: dom	×
Retention         Junk Mail         Calendar         Teaming         Tutorial         Address Book           General         Client Access         Views         File Location         Cleanup         Appearance	
Mail and Phone	
<u>Manual Delete and Archive</u>	
O Auto-Delete after: 30 ★ days	
○ Auto-Archive after: 30 Å days	
Appointment, Task, and Note	
Manual <u>D</u> elete and Archive	
Auto-Selete after:	
$\bigcirc$ Auto-Archive after: 14 $\frac{    }{    }$ days	
Empty Trash-	
⊖ Manual	
Automatic after: 7     Automatic afte	
🗖 Do not purge items until they are backed up 🗊 🕲	
Prompt user <u>b</u> efore purging	
Perform maintenance purges on caching/remote	
Force synchronization of cleanup options to caching/remote	
Restore Default Settings	
	_
<u>OK</u> <u>Cancel Help</u>	p

In the Cleanup tab, UNCHECK the box on "Allow purge of items not backed up" to ENABLE SmartPurge. Lock it to prevent users from disabling it.

(GroupWise 8 uses reverse logic with the purge option. GroupWise 8 lists to "Do not purge items until they are backed up." Reverse the setting for the desired effect.)

Several different backup-retention services may currently use this same timestamp. Plan your system accordingly as Retain also uses this flag. The SmartPurge feature ONLY uses the backup / purge flag set as shown above. If another flag is desired, use of the Item Store Flag is recommended.

**Retention Flag** 

The Retention flag is set up a little differently than SmartPurge. (This is only used when Stubbing.)

- 1) A Trusted App requesting Retention Services must be created. (Done at Retain setup time).
- 2) The Retention flag is enabled on a per domain/po/user basis.
- 3) From the 'Retention' tab under Environment Options, the setting should look like this:

Environment Options: dom ×	
Retention         Junk Mail         Calendar         Teaming         Tutorial         Address Book           General         Client Access         Views         File Location         Cleanup         Appearance	
Enable Message Retention Service	
Retain	
Description:	Enable Message Retention Service
	Retain
<u>R</u> estore Default Settings	
<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	

Notice in this example that Retain is listed as a trusted application. This was done during our postinstall tasks when we ran the Trusted Application Key program.

Next, CHECK the box to ENABLE the Retention Flag service. Lock it on.

#### Miscellaneous

 Core Settings
 Message Settings
 Scope
 Miscellaneous

 Miscellaneous

 You can save disk space by restricting attachment storage. You can also attach the Routing Properties to the message, if desired.

 Store all attachments
 Don't store MIME.822 attachments
 Don't store any attachments, other than the message

 You may choose to store Sent Items properties, and/or store and index the Internet Headers. Both of these (particularly Sent Items properties) exact a performance penalty). However, it may be worthwhile to store and index the Internet Header if your compliance policy then allows Retain to choose to skip storing MIME.822 (which consumes lots of disk space since it's not usually single-instanceable).

 Store/index Internet Headers
 Include Routing Properties

#### Miscellaneous: What to do with attachments

Most of the time, you will want to store all attachments. That is the default.

But if you don't want to store attachments, you can control this here. Note that the attachment names and sizes will still be listed when viewing the message, but the attachments will be clearly marked as unavailable.

Retain can stores the Index or Internet Headers and the Routing properties of messages. This information is stored in a XML attached to the message document and is searchable.

#### **Store/index Internet Headers**

This option tells Retain to store the headers in the SQL database. In order to use the header search option in the search interface you must have this option selected. To save disk space and still satisfy storage compliance, select this option and select "Don't store the mime.822 attachments". All other parts of the MIME file are already being archived, so if you store and index the Internet Header, you will already be archiving all information required.

#### Advanced

Advanc	ed Criteria				
You may a	add advanced criter	ia such as sneci	ific attachment nam	es, sizes, subject here.	
				,,,	
Add					
Delete	Subject 💌	zi	*		
	Subject Sender				
	Recipient Size				
Folder S	Attachment Name				
					sons to include. Choose a folder
bot, an o he pattei		ou may nave m	iuitipie subtoiders wi	th the \ delimiter, and wr	ether to include all subfolders in
	19129				
Items from	All Folders	~			
Items from ONLY items	All Folders from folders listed belo	N			
	XCEPT those listed belo				

#### **Advanced Criteria**

If you want to be more specific as to what to dredge or not to dredge, add the criteria here. Each line will be *logically AND*-ed together.

Think "Dredge all items where the following is true:"

Criteria A *and* Criteria B *and* Criteria C etc.

You may select based on:

- Subject
- > Sender
- ➢ Recipient
- Size
- Attachment Name

Whether they are equal to, not equal to, whether they contain or do not contain the item you specify.

This gives you great flexibility and granularity. It allows you to customize dredges and retention for many different groups, or even individuals.

#### **Folder Scope**

By default we dredge items from all folders. You can specify one or more inclusions or exclusions. Your choices are:

- Dredge everything
- Dredge only these listed folders
- > Dredge everything EXCEPT these listed folders

#### How to specify the list of folders to dredge/exclude:

- 6) Specify a System Folder (mandatory). Example: Calendar.
- 7) You specify a subfolder of that folder (optional).
  - Example: entering "old" would mean the folder "old" under "Calendar".
- 8) You can have multiple hierarchies under that with the / delimiter.

Example "old/mail" would mean the subfolder "mail" under "old" under "Calendar".

 You specify if the option includes subfolder. Example: If you select "old" and "includes subfolder" is unchecked, "Calendar/mail" is selected. If "includes subfolder" is CHECKED, "Calendar/old/mail" would also be selected.

#### **Social Messaging Profile**

To create a new profile to archive social messaging data, first select the 'add profile' button and name the profile. Then continue configuring as desired.

The **Core Settings** tab holds the enabling setting, which allows jobs connected to this profile to run. This must be checked before jobs will run.

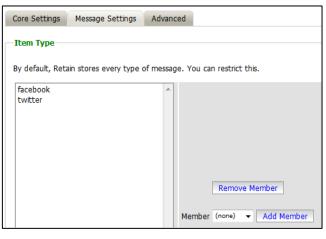
🛎 Profiles	
8	
All	
	Add Profile
	Edit Profile
	Remove Profile
Ŧ	

	lessage Settings	Advanced			
Profile Functions					
Enable Archiving	a (store messages	in Retain)			

The **Message Settings** tab can be used to exclude or include specific data types for this profile. By default all types of messages will be archived. If left blank, the default will persist.

If only specific data types are to be included in a profile, they can be selected from the Member drop-down list, and added to the inclusion list.

All types of data included in the list will be archived. If the list is blank, all users and data will be archived.



Under the **Advanced** tab, specific criteria can be

used to restrict the archived data. Any combination of the variables listed may be used to restrict the data selection. Advanced criteria may be added up to 7 fields.

Core Setting	gs Message Settings	dvanced	
Advanced	Criteria		
You may ad	ld advanced criteria such as	pecific attachment names, sizes, subject here.	
Add			
Delete	Subject	is 💌	
	Subject	is	
	Sender	is not	
	Recipient	contains	
	Attachment size (bytes)	does not contain	
	Attachment name (* ok)	J	

Save changes and the profile is configured.

## Workers

You will need to set up at least one Retain Worker. The Retain Worker does the actual work of collecting the data from a message system and delivering it to the Retain Server. The Retain Worker component is normally installed local to each GroupWise mail server, or any Exchange server from which you wish to collect data. Although a Worker may be installed on a machine running Retain Server, this is normally not recommended or sufficient, except for very small (100 or fewer users) systems or for evaluation purposes. Ideally, the worker you choose to dredge mail from a desired server is local to the server itself. Using a worker on "Server A" to pull data from a mailbox server on "Server B" is possible, but it will use up network bandwidth and will be slower than simply pulling data locally. For this reason, Retain was designed to allow you as many workers as you need, on Linux or Windows.

#### **Worker Configuration Options**

Overview	💞 Workers	,	2	2
Documentation Search Messages Audit Log				*
System Log Data Collection	new worker Add Worker			
Schedules	Edit: Worker No jobs are associated with this worker.			
Profiles	Remove Worker			
Workers Jobs				
I JODS				
Management	Enter new worker below			
Users Groups	Worker new worker			
Deletion Management	Poling Logging Connection Module specific			
Configuration	- Interval			
Server Configuration Module Configuration	Litter val			
Storage Manager	How often should the worker poll for configuration changes, and how many messages should the worker send before updating status?			
Stubbing Server	Poll for configuration every 10 minutes			
Licensing	Update status every 500 messages.			

- > Polling: Defines how often the worker polls for configuration changes. (Jobs, job changes, etc.)
  - Default is 10 minutes.
  - Default is to update the displayed status every 500 messages while running the job.
- Logging Controls logging by the Retain Worker.
  - o Default is NORMAL.
- Connection. Important. This is the information the worker needs to connect to the Server. Double check this setting.
  - o Protocol
  - o URL/host name
  - o password
  - If the connection information is changed, you will need to manually copy the Retain Worker.cfg bootstrap file over to the Worker
    - Correcting the Bootstrap:
      - 1) Stop Tomcat.
      - 2) First delete the Retain Worker.cfg file on the Worker machine. For security reasons, there is no way to do this except by manually deleting the file from the server console itself. The path is: Retain Worker/WEB-INF/cfg. Removing the bootstrap resets the worker to initial configuration.
      - 3) Restart and re-upload the bootstrap to the worker.
- Status Basic status information on the Worker. This status information is updated while the

worker is running according to the "Update Status" interval described above.

**Bootstrap** – Indicates the download link and when it was last downloaded.

#### **Worker Configuration**

From the Retain home page, click Workers. You will see this screen:

migrator new worker	Add Worker Edit Worker No jobs are associated with this worker. Remove Worker	
Enter new worker below Worker new worker	*	
Polling Logging Connection Module s	pecific	

- 1) Click "Add Worker".
- 2) Put the name of the worker in the "Worker" box. *Example:* "Linux Worker 1".
- 3) Check the Connections Tab to be sure the Retain Server IP address settings are correct. This tells the Worker where the Retain Server is located. (Server Host Name or IP address must be correct; this should be populated automatically, but double check for accuracy.) The Server Connection setting must be able to resolve to the Retain Server if placed in a browser address bar.

Polling Logging	Connection Mod	dule specific
Server Connectio	n	
important to note t	hat you are specifying	nnect to the Server. It is highly recommended that you use a DNS host name for the Host Name. It's the URL from the point of view of the <b>Worker contacting the Server</b> , which may or may not match the n the Worker or Server.
As part of setting o	f the Reload Server, yo	ce, note the worker password assigned must be the same for each worker that contacts the Reload Server. ou must know this password.
Server Protocol	http 👻	
Server Host Name	192.168.1.106	
Server Port	48080	
Server Path	/RetainServer	
Worker Password	•••••	
Note: Changing an	of these parameters	will require recopying the worker bootstrap file!
note: changing any	or these parameters	wiii require recopying the worker bootscrap nie:

The Connection tab holds very important contact information for the worker's connection to the Retain Server and the Post Office. Make sure that the Retain Server connection address is correct, or the Retain Worker will not be able to talk to the server.

Double check all these settings to ensure that you will have the best performance and connection for your system.

## **IMPORTANT NOTE!**

It is vitally important that the connection information is correct before you save the worker. On a single server system, it is easy enough – it's the same server. However, in an enterprise setting where you might be using different components on different servers, it is extremely important that each component knows how to connect to the Retain Server.

If you do not set this correctly, the Retain Worker will NOT be able to contact the Retain Server and it will not run jobs.

4) The Module Specific tab contains information specific to individually configured modules. With Exchange, you may optionally specify a specific Active Directory Site the worker is located in. That allows Retain to find the "closest" Exchange Server that is appropriate for the user to be archived. The settings specified here are tied only to the specific worker configured, and does not affect the rest of the system. In general this setting may be ignored unless required. If required, input the appropriate information.

Polling	Logging	Connection	Module specific	Status	Bootstrap	
epending	on the mo	dules you have	configured, you will	need to p	rovide addition	al configuration information here.
Group	Vise SOAP	Access				
Groups	ISE SUAF	Access				
						al default POA (preferably one local to the Worker) to gather job supwise Module Configuration, but it can be changed on a per worker
POA Ho	st Name 19	92.168.1.104				
SC	OAP Port 7	191				
En	able SSL 📃	]				
Exchan	ge					
			oox, it performs an a thm, although this is		ery process to	find the "best" server to connect to. Providing an Active Directory Sit
Active D	Directory Sit	e (case sensitiv	e)			

5) After you have checked and set your settings, click "**Save Changes**" before browsing to another page to finish creating and to save your worker.

After the worker has been saved, two additional tabs become visible for settings on the worker. You MUST save changes on a newly created worker before the 'Bootstrap' tab is available to be used.

The status tab for the new worker will not hold any pertinent information until a job has been run or the worker has registered to the server and is in communication. Once a job has been completed, information will be displayed on the general status of the selected Worker.

Polling Logging Co	onnection Module spe	ific Status	Bootstrap
Worker Status			
Registered	26-Jan-2011 05:07:25		
Last contact	09-Mar-2011 20:35:39		
Last Job	new exchange {D69530	CFFBACFFE9F4	A32EE560D13257
Last job start	09-Mar-2011 20:35:39		
Last job end	09-Mar-2011 20:35:42		
Total mailboxes scanned	7		
Total messages stored	18590		

Check this page after the worker has completed connecting to the Server for information and jobs. After a job has been run, or is running, more pertinent information, such as total mailboxes scanned and messages stored, will be displayed.

6) After you have saved the changes, the Bootstrap tab appears (see below). Click "Download File" to save the configuration to a local workstation.

Polling	Logging	Connection	Module specific	Status	Bootstrap
Boot S	trap				
					file copied to its working directory before it can function correctly. You may copy it inWorkeripAddress>/RetainWorker)
Downloa	ad File				
		hu Jan 20 17:12 1718138F8EF5D	:38 MST 2011 IE18FAE00CEA7		

7) Save this file to your hard drive in a place where you can find it. Click "Save".

File Down	load 🛛
Do you y	want to open or save this file?
	Name: RetainWorker.cfg Type: Unknown File Type, 984 bytes From: 192.168.10.65 Open Save Cancel
	While files from the Internet can be useful, some files can potentially narm your computer. If you do not trust the source, do not open or save this file. <u>What's the risk?</u>

8) Open a new browser window and type:

http://< your-RetainWorker-ip >/RetainWorker

This screen appears when a worker has not been initialized.

9) Upload the bootstrap file.

Worker	
	r needs to be configured in the Archive Server web interface. Once a worker has been configured a file needs to be downloaded and applied to the worker here.
file any conf	bootstrap file the Worker will not know how to find the Archive server. After applying the bootstrap iguration changes made in the server will be polled by this worker. You will not have to reconfigure manually unless you change the Connectivity settings configured in the Archive Server.
Upload B	ootstrap Configuration
	Browse_
Upload	d File
Moro In	oformation
	oad the bootstrap file and upload it here:
	ien the Archive server's web interface. lect the Worker.
	vigate to the Bootstrap tab.
	lect 'Download File'.
	ve the file to your desktop. turn to this interface.
	ck 'Browse' and locate the file on your desktop.
• Cli	ck 'Upload File' below.

> Click "Browse" to find the file you just downloaded to select it.

	Choose file					? 🛛
Upload Bootstrap Configuration	Look in:	testserver		• + •	* 💷 •	
Upload File	My Recent Documents Desktop	Worker.cfg				
More Information To download the bootstrap file and upload it here: Open the Retain server's web interface. Select the Worker. Navigate to the Bootstrap tab.	My Documents					
Select 'Download File'. Save the file to your desktop. Return to this interface. Click 'Browse' and locate the file on your desktop.	My Network Places	File name: Files of type:	Worker.cfg All Files (".")			Dpen Cancel

- Click "Open".
- Click "Upload File".
- If the upload went well, you will see this screen:

Configuration Complete. From now on, you'll have to log in as a user (such as the initially created admin user) with the Manage Workers right.

After you click the "Continue" button, you will be returned to the login page. 10) Login as Admin.

Login	
Login Password	
l i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	Login

On all subsequent logins, you should be shown the configuration page first.

Worker Configuration	
Friendly Name	linux worker
Worker Unique ID	A08A7635B8D4025F0A0E7E76B00C978F
URI to Server	http://10.1.1.103/RetainServer
Worker Version	1.6.0
Memory Free/Max/Total	59551/1048576/262654
Check for New Version	
Refresh job cache now	
Click "Refresh job cache now" to prompt the worker	to poll for configuration changes right now.
Jootstrap information has been applied to this server	. If the configuration must be changed in the future, replace the configuration file at /opt/beginfinite/retain/RetainWorker/WEB-INF/cfg/ and restart

You should be able to see your configuration on the screen, as shown. The "Check for New Version" button checks for updates. The "Refresh job cache now" button tells the worker to poll the server for configuration changes and new jobs. After this button is selected, the Worker page will refresh automatically after the Retain Server has been polled. It takes just a few seconds.

11) Verify the Retain Server connection success by selecting the Server Connection tab.

Configuration	Server Connection	Status	Scheduler
Server Co	nection		
Success	fully connected to se	erver	

- ➢ Go back to the Retain Server.
- Click "Workers".
- Click on the worker you just created.

#### You should see the following:

Workers		🖯 🖯 🖓 🕄
New worker Worker new worker loaded. Worker new worker	Add Worker Associated Jobs Edit Worker • new exchange • new job • david only Remove Worker	
Polling Logging Connection Mod	ule specific Status Bootstrap	
Interval How often should the worker poll for con Poll for configuration every 10 minut Update status every 500 messages.	iguration changes, and how many messages should the worker send before updating status? s	

Pay close attention to "Poll for configuration every 'n' minutes. This is how often Retain will check for new jobs.

Also, status updates are displayed on the admin page every 'n' messages.

Now, set logging to a level you would like. You may use "Diagnostic" at first, until the system is fully operational and tested. Please be aware, however, that using this setting will write a huge amount of data in the log files.

The **profiles**, **schedules** and **jobs** must be setup, if they already have not been, in order to begin actual data collection.

### Jobs

Jobs are separated into different modules. A module, schedule, profile, and worker must be configured before a Job can be created. Module specific job menu's only display when multiple modules are configured. Jobs bring the entire configuration together to archive mail from the mail server, according to the configuration. Jobs are where data collection is achieved.

A job:

- > Starts according to the selected SCHEDULE.
- > Collects data according to the selected **PROFILE**.
- Utilizes the selected WORKER, and only the selected worker according to the schedule and profile.
- Collects data from the specified mail source, (messaging server, distribution list, group, and individual user)

Jobs look and act differently depending on which module they are configured under. Select the desired module from the Job menu, (or simply 'Jobs' if only module is configured), and configure according to job needs.

#### **Exchange Jobs**

All mail archiving is accomplished through this interface because the methods to interact with the Exchange system are tied into this job interface. Only Exchange profiles will be able to be viewed or selected through this interface, and no other modules profile will be selectable here. However, schedules and workers are universal and can be selected in any modules' job interface.

Overview	🐇 Jobs
Documentation Search Messages Audit Log	9
System Log	Add Job
Data Collection	Edit. Job
Schedules Profiles	
Workers Jobs	Remove Job
Exchange Social Networking	

To create a new job, select the 'Add Job' button and provide a name for the job. To save a job, the job must have a Profile, Worker, Schedule, and a mailbox, distribution list, or server to be archived. In other words, a job must have a time to run, types of things to get, something to get it with, and a target or a place to get it, in order to be saved and run.

A job without an assigned profile, schedule, worker, or mailbox cannot be saved.

#### Core Settings

Under 'Core Settings' the profile, schedule, and worker are selected. Only existing profiles, workers, and schedules may be selected. The selected schedule will determine when the job is run; the Profile determines what kinds of mail are archived, and the worker is the agent which performs the work.

Job enable	ed 🔽				
Each Job must hav	e the follo	wing assigned	to it:		
<ul> <li>schedule - I</li> <li>profile - Wh</li> <li>worker - W</li> </ul>	nat to do w	hen running			
Schedu	le david on	у 👻			
Profi	le exchange	-			
11011					
Worke		an optionally b		"expiration t	imestamp" which the Deletion Manager can use to remove obsolete items. The expiration
Works Items archived with timestamp can only Enable data expir	n this job ca v be extend ration 🔲	an optionally b		"expiration t	timestamp" which the Deletion Manager can use to remove obsolete items. The expiration
Works Items archived with timestamp can only Enable data expir Exp	n this job ca y be extend ration pire in 0	an optionally b led, never red Days	duced.	·	timestamp" which the Deletion Manager can use to remove obsolete items. The expiration
Works Items archived with timestamp can only Enable data expir	n this job ca y be extend ration pire in 0	an optionally b led, never red Days	duced.	·	timestamp" which the Deletion Manager can use to remove obsolete items. The expiration $lacksquare$
Worke Items archived with timestamp can only Enable data expir Expiration Tin Base Expiration Tin	n this job ca v be extend ration pire in 0 ne on Date	an optionally b led, never red Days Item is stored in	v Retain (recommen	ided)	

The data expiration is an option to place a timestamp on the mail in the Retain database, which allows for ease of automation for the deletion manager. In addition, devices such as NetApp, Centera, Caringo, and Hitachi HCAP may use this number to enforce hardware level protection of the stored item so that no one (including Retain) may delete the item before its expiration date.

This time stamp simply puts a date on which the mail is "set to expire", and can be in days, months, or years. Mail that has 'expired' due to this time stamp will remain in the database until removed by the deletion manager.

Job Expiration is not retroactive for mail in the database, and only applies to mail archived by the job that it is active for.

There may be some folders which it may not be desirable to place an expiration time stamp on. Such folders may be specified through the 'add' button at the bottom of the page.

Some customers may wish to override the default expiration settings for specific folders. You may specify these folders below - any folders the have the expiration settings specified above applied. If you only want the folders to have expiration policies, enter -1 above for the base exp	
Add	
Delete Rcct Days	

The base folders and criteria specified here. All messages included in these folders will have a different, if specified, or exempted from the expiration date.

#### Journaling

Journaling MUST be enabled on the Exchange system, and Journaling mailboxes must be provided for legal archive compliance.

Core Settings	Journaling	Mailboxes	Notification	Status	
Journaling					
entry to be de	leted after bei	ng archived (r		You may also	nailboxes to be dredged by the Worker below, and indicate if you wish the original journal consolidate all archived items to a single mailbox (funnel mailbox) in Retain. If you do not oxes in Retain.
Make sure all e	ntries belong t	o the domain	you specified in	the Core Set	ings tab, or they will not be saved.
	Enable Jour	naling 📝			
Delete archive	d items from jo	ournal 🔽			
Journaling ma	ailbox				
	_				I
Funnel mailbo	X				

To archive messages contained in the Journaling mailbox, specify the Journaling mailbox by selecting it from the user/mailbox list. Open the mailbox selection window by selecting the 'Journaling mailbox' button and searching for the desired mailbox.

After searching for mailboxes and users in the cached address book, the users must be added to the list by selecting the checkbox next to the desired name in the search results box, then selecting the 'Add Selected' button at the top.

The red 'X' next to the names in the 'Currently Selected' list allows removal of selected items. Once

ld Selected Ok urrently Selected							
<ul><li>admin</li><li>David Bassett</li></ul>							
riteria							
irst Name how only users V	begins with Show only recently	cached items	Sea	rch			
First Name volume how only users V s	-		Sea <u>Mailbox</u>	rch Dept.	<u>Type</u>	Domain	
First Name v how only users v ddress Book	Show only recently	cached items			<u>Түре</u> U	<u>Domain</u> dom	
First Name	Show only recently	cached items	Mailbox				
First Name	Show only recently Last admin	cached items	<u>Mailbox</u> admin		U	dom	

the list has been configured as designed, selecting the 'Ok' button from the top of the window will add the selected names to the list.

A 'Funnel' mailbox creates a single mailbox in Retain that 'funnels' all the mail from all the different journaling mailboxes into one. If this is not specified, then each Journaling mailbox will be created and archived in the Retain system as any normal mailbox would be archived and created.

It is HIGHLY recommended to delete archived items from the journaling mailbox to avoid bloating the existing message system or requiring manual maintenance and management of the Journaling mailboxes.

#### Mailboxes

The final setting that a Job must have in order to be saved and run, is a target: where to archive mail from. The Mailboxes tab dictates where a Job will look for mail to archive. Only the users or mail server included in a job will be archived by the job when it is run.

Core Settings	Journaling	Mailboxes	Notification	Status	
Mailboxes					
Assign the Mail	Servers, Datab	oase stores, ar	nd/or Distributio	Lists to be included in this job.	
Make sure all er	ntries belong to	o the domain	you specified in	he Core Settings tab, or they will not be saved.	
8	1	Mail Serve	rs		
🗉 🗣 🔽	WINSERV086	54			
•	1	Distributio	n Lists		
Users					

Users may be specified separately, whole servers may be selected, and distribution lists spanning different servers may be selected. A job may span all the selected options, or only one of them, but jobs will be faster and more efficient if they are balanced in their scope, for instance, one separate job for each server each with its respective worker, to allow multiple jobs to be run simultaneously without overwhelming one server or worker.

The open text box next to the selection area is a search or filtering interface which allows the administrator to only display distribution lists or mail servers that match the criteria. A blank criteria window will result in all known servers or distribution lists being displayed.

If a user is desired to be included in or excluded from a job, the selection method is identical to that of the Journaling mailbox. Search for the user via the Select Mailbox window and add it to the list.

Mail servers in Exchange may also be expanded into their respective mailbox databases, and individual, or selective mailbox databases may be selected or excluded from any specific job.

#### Notification

All errors, summaries, and statistics may be sent in an email notification to a desired address on job completion. If it is desired to be notified, configure the notifications under this tab. At least one of the two notification options must be selected in order for an email notification to be created.

Core Settings Mailboxes N	otification Status				
Notification					
Notification					
You can have Archive e-mail a su	mmary of operations and/	or errors that occurred v	when the job complete	es.	
	100.100.1.101				
SMTP Mail Serve	r 192.168.1.121				
SMTP Mail From Addres	s admin@company.com				
SMTP To Addres	admin@company.com				
SMTP Usernam	e sam				
SMTP Passwor	d •••••	(Password is default)			
Mail when errors occu	Ir 📃				
Mail summary when job complet	e 🔳				
Test Connection					

#### Status

On initial creation, there will be nothing of interest shown under the 'Status' tab, as the job is under creation or has not yet run.

However, after a job has been run, or has begun, the 'Status' tab becomes a monitoring tool to report on exactly how much mail and mailboxes have been archived, along with any errors encountered.

Core Settings	Journaling	Mailboxes	Notification	Status		
Status [Refre	shes in 0]—					
Job: new exch	nange (D6953)	CFFBACFFE9F	4A32EE560D132	57)		
		Current		Last	Overall	
Job began				04-Mar-2011 10:35:46		
Job ended				04-Mar-2011 10:35:50		
Mailboxes		0		2	2	
Messages		0		0	0	
Errors		0		0	0	
		Current		Last	Error	
Mailbox						
MS						
Error						

#### **GroupWise Jobs**

All data collection for the GroupWise is configured through the GroupWise job interface. The jobs here combine the GroupWise Profile, the Schedule, and a worker together to archive a specified mailbox, distribution list, or domain. A Job must have a Profile, Schedule, Worker, and a target, mailbox, list, or domain, before it can be saved or run.

#### **Core Settings**

Overview	🖕 Jobs	1. 2. 3
Documentation	8	
Search Messages	3	
Audit Log	david only	
System Log	dot bbA	
Data Collection	Edit Job	
Schedules		
<ul> <li>Profiles</li> </ul>	Remove Job	
Workers	itembre sol	
<ul> <li>Jobs</li> </ul>	<b>v</b>	
Exchange		
GroupWise	Job new job loaded.	
Management	Job new job	
Users		
Groups	Core Settings Mailboxes Reload Notification Status	
Deletion Management		
	Core Settings	
Configuration	Job enabled 🔽	
Server Configuration	Each Job must have the following assigned to it:	
Module Configuration	schedule - How often to run	
Storage Manager	<ul> <li>schedule - How often to run</li> <li>profile - What to do when running</li> </ul>	=
Stubbing Server	• worker - Where to run the job	
Licensing		
	Schedule   full run job 👻	
	Profile Groupwise -	
	Worker new worker	
	WORKE WARMEN	
	Items archived with this job can optionally be set with an "expiration timestamp" which the Deletion Manager can use to remove obsolete items. Th expiration timestamp can only be extended, never reduced.	e
	Enable data expiration	
	Expire in 0 Days -	
	Base Expiration Time on Date Item is stored in Retain (recommended)	
	Some customers may wish to override the default expiration settings for specific folders. You may specify these folders below - any folders that do I meet these criteria will have the expiration settings specified above applied. If you only want the folders to have expiration policies, enter -1 above base expiration value.	

The Schedule, Profile, and Worker selected here will determine what is archived, when it is archived, and what worker does the actual archival work. The Job MUST be enabled in order to run. Only previously configured Schedules, Profiles, and Workers can be selected.

The **Job Expiration** is an option to place a timestamp on the mail in the Retain database, which allows for ease of automation for the deletion manager. In addition, devices such as NetApp, Centera, Caringo, and Hitachi HCAP may use this number to enforce hardware level protection of the stored item so that no one (including Retain) may delete the item before its expiration date.

Job Expiration is not retroactive for mail in the database, and only applies to mail archived by the job that it is active for.

#### Mailboxes

The mailboxes tab is where the administrator specifies which entities (mail server(s) and/or Distribution List(s)) are to be scanned.

Expand the Post Office and/or Distribution List trees, and check off the items you want to be dredged. Note: If you desire to have a job backup a single user, or selected group of users, select the Users menu and assign the user(s) desired

Core Settings M	poxes Reload Notification Status
Mailboxes	
Assign the Post Of	is and/or Distribution Lists to be included in this job. Distribution Lists <i>must</i> have System Visibility.
	Mail Servers
🔽 po (do 🗉	) Sistribution Lists

The users section allows you to select individual users to include, or exclude them from an archive job.

For example: you can select an entire Post Office to be archived, and then expand the users section to include or exclude users to the job.

This can also be used to select only certain users in the system for an archive job.

±	Mail Servers	
Users	P Distribution Lists	
nclude:		
Add User		
样 🚦 Bastula		
样 🚦 blufish		
xclude:		
Add User		

To add a user to the Include or Exclude list, select the respective 'Add user' button and search for the user. It can be helpful to unselect the 'only show recently cached items' option.

Add the selected users to the list in the search window, then select 'Ok' to add them to the include or exclude list.

**NOTE:** Retain cannot access certain GroupWise accounts due to GroupWise account limitations. Expired and Disabled accounts are inaccessible to Retain. Prior to GroupWise 7.0.3, limited license accounts also cannot be accessed by Retain.

If an expired or disabled user account, (or limited license accounts under GroupWise 7.0.3), is selected for a job, or a post office containing such user accounts is selected, Retain will notify the administrator of a failure to archive those users. This is not an error, it is a limitation imposed by GroupWise. GroupWise and Retain are functioning correctly.

#### Reload

Selecting this option tells the job to use the Reload integration for systems utilizing Reload. See the <u>Reload integration</u> section for more information. The Server URL must be edited with the correct contact info for the reload server. The default Reload port is 5555.

Core Settings	Mailboxes	Reload	Notification	Status	
Reload					
You can backup Reload machine					th if desired. This requires Reload 2.5 or newer and some configuration changes on the tion.
Enable Reload			l ID C		
	Server URL h	стр://туке	IIO30B0X:2		
Advanced Reloa	iu secongs				

Retain instructs Reload to load the corresponding backup set for each date range in the profile. If a different set needs to be specified, the override setting specifies a date range specifically for Reload, which then will ignore the date range in the profile. Retain will still archive according to the profile date range or settings.

Advanced Reload Settings
Normally the Reload Sets that are backed up correspond to the Date Range specified in the profile. Occasionally, you might want to override this.
Override Reload Date Range
Start:       1995       Jan       01       1         End:       1995       Jan       01       1

#### Notification

When a job runs, you can request an error report or job summary to be sent by e-mail.

Core Settings	Mailboxes	Reload	Notification	Status
- Notification -				
Notification				
You can have R	etain e-mail a	summary	of operations an	d/or errors
	SMTP Mail Se	erver 192	.168.1.104	
SMTP	Mail From Add	iress reta	in@gwava.com	
	SMTP To Add	lress adm	nin@gwava.com	
	SMTP Usern	ame chri	5	
	SMTP Passv	vord •••	•	
Mail	when errors o	ccur 🔳		
Mail summary w	hen job comp	olete 📃		
Test Connect	ion			

#### Job Status

When a job is not running, the status tab displays information about the last time it ran: [Status [Refreshes in 1]

	Current	Last	Overall
Job Began	Not running	12-Oct-2007 12:00:00	
Job Ended		16-Oct-2007 12:42:04	
Mailboxes	46	46	46
Messages	7596	238896	238896
Errors	0	0	0
	Current	Last	Error
Mailbox	steve	beta	
PO	rlpo	rlpo	
Error			

#### When a job is running, you have the option of aborting the job:

Current	Last	Overall
19-Feb-2008 13:10:00	never	
Abort Job	never	
92%)		
13	0	0
3568	0	0
0	0	0
Current	Last	Error
		EITOI
lindy	craig	
po-702	po-702	
	Abort Job           92%)           13           3568           0           Current           Indy	Current         Last           19-Feb-2008 13:10:00         never           Abort Job         never           92%)         13         0           3568         0         0           0         0         0           Current         Last         Last           indy         craig         0

This window will refresh every ten seconds to keep you up to date as to the status of the selected job. Is it running, did it run and when, how long did it take, what did it accomplish?

In the title, it displays a refresh countdown in seconds.

The completed line is displayed during an active job. The completed status is a display of how many mailboxes have been completed, the job mailbox total, and gives an incrementing percentage for the amount completed. This amount is based entirely on the number of mailboxes, not the amount of mail. Because the last mailbox could be larger than the rest of the system, this percentage may not be accurate according to time.

#### **Social Messaging Jobs**

All data collection for the Social Messaging module is configured through the Social Messaging job interface. The jobs here combine the Profile, the Schedule, and a Worker together to archive a specified mailbox, distribution list, or domain. A Job must have a Profile, Schedule, Worker, and a target, mailbox, list, or domain, before it can be saved or run.

#### **Core Settings**

Core Settings							
Job enabled							
Each Job must have the	-	gned to it:					
<ul> <li>schedule - How of profile - What to</li> </ul>		aina					
<ul> <li>worker - Where t</li> </ul>							
Schedule	(none) 🔻						
Profile	(none) 👻						
Worker	(none) 👻						
					"bish the Del		
tems archived with this j obsolete items. The expi						etion Manager	can use to remove
		inp can only be	excended, neve	, reduced			
Enable data expiration							
Expire in	0 Da	vs 🔻					
				•			
Base Expiration Time on	Double Three Standard						

The Schedule, Profile, and Worker selected here will determine what is archived, when it is archived, and what worker does the actual archival work. The Job MUST be enabled in order to run. Only previously configured Schedules, Profiles, and Workers can be selected.

The **Job Expiration** is an option to place a timestamp on the data in the Retain database, which allows for ease of automation for the deletion manager. In addition, devices such as NetApp, Centera, Caringo, and Hitachi HCAP may use this number to enforce hardware level protection of the stored item so that no one (including Retain) may delete the item before its expiration date.

Job Expiration is not retroactive for data in the database, and only applies to data archived by the job that it is active for.

#### Users Guide

#### Mailboxes

The mailboxes tab contains the target users, distribution lists or groups to be archived by the job. By default, all users are included.

The job may be restricted to

specific users, either on the 'Include Users' list. To add users, expand the User's option box and select the users to be archived. For users to be available for this dialog box, the RSM must have been configured with users. Users may be selected through the user search interface, spawned through selecting the 'add user' button.

If there are users listed, then the users listed in the 'Include Users' box are the ONLY included users, while those listed in the 'Exclude' window are excluded from the jobs.

#### Notification

All errors, summaries, and statistics may be sent in an email notification to a desired address on job completion. If it is desired to be notified, configure the notifications under this tab. At least one of the two notification options must be selected in order for an email notification to be created.

#### Status

On initial creation, there will be nothing of interest shown under the 'Status' tab, as the job is under creation or has not yet run.

However, after a job has been run, or has begun, the 'Status' tab becomes a monitoring tool to report on exactly how much mail and mailboxes have been archived, along with any errors encountered.



М	ail	bo	X	es	

Assign the Mail Servers, Database stores, and/or Distribution Lists to be included in this job.

Make sure all entries belong to the domain you specified in the Core Settings tab, or they will not be saved.

Users				
Include Users:				
Add User				
Add Oser				
Endude Unerer				
Exclude Users:				
Add User				
You can have Retain e-	mail a summary of	operations and/o	r errors that occurred	when the job comple
SMTP	Mail Server 192.1	.68.1.104		
SMTP Mail Fro	m Address retain			
	In Address Tecali	@gwava.com		
	Fo Address admin			
SMTP	To Address admin Username chris	@gwava.com		
SMTP SMTP	To AddressadminUsernamechrisPassword•••••	@gwava.com	(Password is default	)
SMTP SMTF Mail when e	To Address     admin       Username     chris       Password     •••••       rrors occur     □	@gwava.com	(Password is default	)
SMTP SMTP	To Address     admin       Username     chris       Password     •••••       rrors occur     □	@gwava.com	(Password is default	)
SMTP SMTP Mail when e Mail summary when job	To Address     admin       Username     chris       Password     •••••       rrors occur     □	@gwava.com	(Password is default	)
SMTP SMTP Mail when e Mail summary when job	Fo Address     admin       Username     chris       Password	@gwava.com		)
SMTP SMTF Mail when e Mail summary when Job Test Connection	To Address     admin       Username     chris       Password	@gwava.com		) Overall
SMTP SMTF Mail when e Mail summary when Job Test Connection	To Address     admin       Username     chris       Password	@gwava.com 03108FB69307 1t Last		
SMTP SMTF Mail when e Mail summary when job Test Connection Job: first (78778DFE	To Address     admin       Username     chris       Password	19gwava.com 03108FB69307 1t Last 15-Sep-2	79A)	
SMTP SMTF Mail when e Mail summary when job Test Connection Job: first (78778DFE Job began Job began Job ended	To Address admin Username chris Password ••••• rrors occur □ o complete □ C4A3E6D22CC Currer  	@gwava.com 03108FB69307 nt Last 15-Sep-2 15-Sep-2	79A) 2012 15:38:09	Overall 
SMTP SMTP Mail when e Mail summary when jot Test Connection Test Connection Sob: first (78778DFE Job: first (78778DFE Job began Job ended Mailboxes	To Address admin Username chris Password occur occomplete CC4A3E6D22CCC Currer 	@gwava.com 03108FB69307 ht Last 15-Sep-2 15-Sep-2 4	79A) 2012 15:38:09	Overall  4
SMTP SMTF Mail when e Mail summary when job Test Connection Job: first (78778DFE Job began Job began Job ended	To Address admin Username chris Password ••••• rrors occur : o complete : C4A3E6D22CC Currer   0	@gwava.com 03108FB69307 nt Last 15-Sep-2 15-Sep-2	79A) 2012 15:38:09	Overall 
SMTP SMTP Mail when e Mail summary when jot Test Connection Job: first (78778DFE Job began Job began Job began Job began Mailboxes Messages	To Address admin Username chris Password ••••• rrors occur • ocomplete • CC4A3E6D22CC Curren • • 0 0	@gwava.com 03108FB69300 nt Last 15-Sep-2 15-Sep-2 4 3321	79A) 2012 15:38:09	Overall  4 3321

admin

po

Mailbox

MS

Error

## Management

## Users

User and Rights Management in Retain include:

- Creating, deleting, and editing users.
- > Allowing new user accounts, and restricting specific ones from being created.
- User expiration.
- Assigning users to groups, to conveniently grant rights or set initial settings on a multiple user basis.
- Granting access to mailboxes others than the user's personal mailbox.
- Changing the specific functions the user can perform.

To access User and Groups Management, the user logging in needs the "Manage users and groups" administrative right.

#### **Creating Users**

The primary purpose of a user account is to store their preferences, rights, mailboxes to which they have access, and authentication information.

#### Users come from one of two places

- > They may be valid message system users logging in with their credentials
  - These users use SOAP authentication for GroupWise and Active Directory authentication for Exchange.
    - Retain checks their login credentials with GroupWise or Exchange
  - These users initially belong to the group *default*. You may change this later.
  - You may restrict users (prevent them from logging in) in <u>Server Configuration</u>.
- They may be specially created in Retain independently of any message system
  - Users created in Retain do not need to have a message system account.
  - Users who don't exist in the message system will use the *offline password*.

#### **Offline Password**

There are, however, occasions when you might want someone to search through the Retain archives, but who is not part of the mail system. Such a person might be an independent auditor, a lawyer, a user deleted from the live system, etc.

For this reason, Retain has an *offline password* system. These passwords are stored in Retain's control database. Retain does not care how a user authenticates: whether offline, via SOAP for GroupWise, Exchange, or LDAP, the same rights can be assigned. An administrator who possesses the Manage Users and Groups' administrative right can assign all the rights they contain.

Users may also be assigned access to more than one mailbox. Offline users will need to be given access to at least one mailbox to perform searches. Users who are assigned "Search All Mailboxes" rights have access to all users' mailboxes.

GroupWise Proxy support only works for users who authenticate via GroupWise SOAP protocol.

Core Settings

#### Creating a new user

- 1) Begin by clicking on the *Add User* button.
- 2) Enter a new user name and then fill out the options under each tab.
- 3) When you are done, click the

**SAVE CHANGES** disk icon at the upper right.

All previously created users are listed and can be edited or removed, by clicking on the *Edit User* or *Remove User* buttons.

admin	The selected user has Administrative rights. This means:
User admin loaded.	Add User  The user can sea all such tigs.  The user can sea all such tigs.  The user can sea all such tigs.  The user can made uses and groups.  The user can made use and groups.  The user can sea bits and renow Warkers. Profiles.  Schedules, lobe.  The user can set the Server Configuration and Idensing
User ID admin Core Settings User Rights	Malboxes Miscelaneous
Core Settings	
Core Settings Authentication Method	Office Authentication
Authentication Method	nt.cbf249a9-8bdd-66b6-144a-c28c764d1818
Authentication Method Primary UID (links your rights)	nt.cb/249a9-8bdd-66b6-144a-c28c764d1818
Authentication Method Primary UID (links your rights) Group Membership	Int.cb/249.49-8bdd 66b6-144a-c28c764d1818 Gelleuit v IV New Confirm
Authentication Method Primiry UID (Inks your rights) Group Membership This account does not expire	Int.cb/24949-8bdd 66b6-144a-c28c764d1818

#### **Core Settings**

- Authentication method
  - SOAP (for GroupWise users)
    - GroupWise users logging in are authenticated using SOAP.
    - These users are automatically entered into Retain's user list.
  - Exchange (SOAP for Exchange). Exchange users are authenticated via SOAP for Exchange and users are added into Retain's user list.
  - o Offline Password (credentials stored within Retain)(any type of user)
  - LDAP authentication The <u>LDAP authentication</u> must be setup under Server Configuration, accounts tab.
  - You may lock a user account so it can only use one type of authentication.
    - If "exclusive" is not checked, it will try one, then the other.
- Primary UID
  - *Offline* only accounts usually won't have one.
  - The initial Admin account is set to use *OFFLINE* exclusively, so it never has one.
- Group Membership.
  - Default is *"default"*
  - Create groups under "<u>Groups</u>" and they will appear as choices here.
  - Users may belong to one and only one group. From an assigned group, additional rights, mailboxes, and initial settings may be inherited.
- Account Expiration.
  - Check this box if this user's account should not expire.

Comment							
Authentication Method	Offline Authentication    Use Exclusively						
Primary UID (links your rights)	2edf61cd-4b81-49bc-953a-f049f0e5be65						
Group Membership	default 👻						
This account does not expire							
Change Internal Password	New Confirm						
	Prevent user from changing						
Language	English 👻						
Disable Account	Date: 2012 V Jul V 27 V						

- o Useful for administrator accounts.
- Normally, accounts expire after 30 days or whatever you set in Server Configuration.
- Offline Password.
  - o If you use this authentication method, store the password here.
  - May be changed as needed.
  - You can prevent the user from changing it themselves.
  - Passwords are always stored in an encrypted format <u>never in clear text</u>.
- Default Language.
  - Choose which language will be used in the Search Interface for this user.
- Disable account
  - This allows the admin to pick a date when the account will no longer be allowed to login, but the account will not be deleted.

## **User Rights**

ers							<b>.</b>
Core Settings	User Rights	Mailboxes	Miscellaneous				
User Rights							
Rights explicitly	granted to the	user.					
Administrator k	-						
Access all							
Deletion M	-						
Manage Se	-						
-	sers and Groups						
-	orkers, Schedul		ahs				
Publish Me		63, FT01163, 30					
	essages (Any M	ailhox1					
Search all							
<u>User level right</u>	<u>s</u>						
View/Save	e attachments						
View pers	onal audit log						
🗹 Export Me	ssages						
🗹 Forward M	lessages						
Print Mess	ages						
🗹 Read Conf	iguration (Redlin	e)					
🗹 Restore m	essages (My Ma	lbox]					
The following ri	ights are additio	nally inherited	from the user's grou	ip membership:			
View/Save atta	chments						
Forward Messages							

When an administrator level right is granted a user, that user will see that right in the management console when they log into Retain. If a right that the full Administrator can view is missing from the menu of that user, they are missing that right. To view and have access to that option, they must have the missing right granted to that user. **If you have performed an upgrade and are missing options, check for a missing administrator right.** 

- Control what rights you grant to the user here. Check the box to enable the right.
- These are extra rights.
  - You don't need ANY of them for the user to access their mailboxes.
  - You do need them to do "special things". The first admin account gets them all.
- Retain first checks your assigned group and you start with the group rights.
- > The rights you explicitly set here are ADDED to the group rights for the user's effective rights.
- > This way, you can control users as a group and give different rights to different groups.

- If you don't have rights to an administrative option, it won't appear on the left.
- It should be clear from this screen that there is no such thing as an "Administrator" per se in Retain. Instead, some users simply have more rights to do more things than others. A distinction is made between Administrator level rights (which allow a user global system wide power) and User level rights, but any user can have zero or more rights in either category. The "administrator" you created in the setup wizard was simply a user account with all of the Administrator level rights granted by default.

# User-Level Rights Summary

# Administrator-level rights

- Access Audit Logs
  - o The Audit Logs become visible.
    - Main menu audit log
    - Message properties audit log
  - You can see user activity on two levels
    - Globally
    - On an individual message basis
- Deletion Manager
  - o Allows management of Deletion jobs.
- Litigation hold
  - Allows excluding mail from Deletion
- Manage Server
  - o Access Server Configuration and Licensing
  - o Access diagnostic utilities
- Manage Users and Groups
  - o Access Users and Groups
- Manage Workers, Profiles, Jobs, Schedules
  - o Access data collection system.
  - Login to Worker web interface
- Allows use of Publisher
- Allows messages to be restored to all mailboxes
- Search All Mailboxes
  - o Grants access to all mailboxes in the system
  - Allows the user to search and browse them.

# Note: Only users with administrative rights will see the administrator's screen on login. Non-admin users are simply forwarded to the Search Interface.

# **User-level rights**

All user level rights are strictly optional, and add additional functionality.

- None are needed to access your own mailbox and other mailboxes assigned to you.
- You may wish to grant Forwarding, View Attachment, and Printing rights.
  - o The initial "default" group created upon installation does this.

#### Administrator level rights

- Access all audit logs
- Deletion Manager
- Apply or remove litigation hold
- Manage Server
- Manage Users and Groups
- Manage Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs
- Publish Messages
- Restore messages [Any Mailbox]
- Search all mailboxes

### User level rights

- View/Save attachments
- View personal audit log
- Export Messages
- Forward Messages
- Print Messages
- Read Configuration (Redline)
- Restore messages [My Mailbox]

**Note:** There is no way to perfectly block printing in a web browser, so using this feature should not be taken as a 100% guarantee that users won't be able to print. Nonetheless, for most users, it is effective.

These rights are self-explanatory:

- View/Save Attachments
- View own audit log
- Forward Messages

The Read Configuration right (Redline Integration)

- Restore Messages (My mailbox only)
- Print Messages

If you are integrating with GWAVA's **Redline** monitoring product, you will need to create a user account so that Redline can log in and retrieve monitoring information. We recommend the following settings:

- Account Never Expires
- > Offline Password Authentication is required. (use exclusively) (be sure to set the password)
- Read Configuration (Redline) right.

## Mailboxes

Select the mailboxes this user will be able to access in addition to their own.

ore Settings	User Rights	Mailboxes	Miscellaneous	
1ailboxes				
nese e-mail ad	dresses (and to	their primary	mailbox), and mig	at the user may access. A non-admin user will only view messages addressed ht be able to forward/delete messages if given rights. An admin with <i>Search</i> peration in the Search Interface.
Currently S	elected			
样 David I	Bassett			
样 Benjar	nin Rush			
Criteria				
First Name		ins with	▼	Search
System Socia	al Networking	<ul> <li>Show only</li> </ul>	users 🔽 Show	only recently cached items 📃
Add Select	ed			
Address Bo	ok			
No items fou	nd. Please try a	another search	ı.	

Often, you will want some users to be able to search through more than just their own mailbox. Administrators can have "Search All Mailboxes" as a right which gives them access to EVERYTHING. This section allows you to give a far more selective range of mailboxes to a user for searching.

In the example above, the user has explicit rights to two mailboxes. These mailboxes can be taken away from the user simply by clicking on the red 'X'.

Adding users to the list is done using the Address Book selector. In the criteria section, you may enter information to search for a mailbox or a set of mailboxes. The search results will appear in the Address Book section. Each listed entry has a check box you can use to select that mailbox for addition to the list. Once you are done selecting, click **Add Selected Items** to add those mailboxes to your list of searchable mailboxes.

Copyright © 2012 GWAVA Inc. All rights reserved.

# Address Book Selector

×	David Bassett								
×	Benjamin Rush								
Criter	ia								
First N	lame 🔻	begins with	▼		Search				
System Social Networking 🔻 Show only users 🕼 Show only recently cached items 🗐									
Syster	m Social Networki	ng 👻 Show or	nly users 📝 Show only	recently cached ite	ems 📃				
	Social Networking	ng	nly users 🔽 Show only	recently cached ite	ems 📃				
		ng    Show or	nly users 👿 Show only	recently cached ite	ems 📃				
Add		ng 👻 Show or	ny users 💟 Show only	recently cached ite	ems 🔲				
Add	Selected	ng Show or Last	Mail Server	Mailbox	ems	<u>Type</u>	Domain		
Add	Selected					<u>Type</u> U	Domain dom		
Add	Selected	Last	Mail Server	Mailbox					
Add	Selected ess Book First	Last admin	<u>Mail Server</u> po	<u>Mailbox</u> admin		U	dom		

This interface is utilized in various other areas, but is described here.

It shows the currently selected items at the top, and lets you delete an item by clicking the red X. (The New Mailbox selector in the Search Interface is an exception; just choose another item)

# **Adding Mailboxes**

- 1) Choose between the configured module systems
- 2) Fill out basic criteria to narrow your search results (or no criteria for the first 100)
- 3) Click Search.
- 4) The results up to a maximum of 100 are displayed. The user can then page back and forth among the first 5 pages of results.
- 5) Choose which of the results you want to add to the selected list
- 6) Click Add Selected Items
- Notes: You can restrict to just Users (skipping Resources) You can show only recently cached items (last 10 days) The search is not case sensitive.

# About "Show only recently cached items"

This option restricts the list of items shown in the selector to those with items stored within the last 10 days. In user/group management, it restricts the list to users who have logged in to the live Mail system within the last 10 days. The idea is to show only current items. If you DO want to see all items regardless of whether they've shown activity within the last 10 days, just uncheck this option.

# **Miscellaneous** Tab

This tab contains settings that mainly govern the way the Search Interface works for the selected user. Note that the user can change any of these settings by using the User Options tab in the <u>Search Interface</u>.

Core Settings User Rights Mailboxes Miscellaneous
Comment
The default comment appended to forwarded messages can be set here.
Comment
Forward Messages
Internet Domain
Date/Time Formats
Defines how dates and times are displayed.
Date Day-ShortMonth-Year  Time 24 Hour
Example: 02-Aug-2012 17:20
Display Number How many items to display per page
Display Number 25 👻
Marrage Age Direby
Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default?
Message Age Display Last 30 days
Session Timeout
Time in minutes, to expire an inactive login session.
Time (minutes) 10

> Comment

Default comment for forwarding messages.

- > Date/Time Format How you want your dates and times to be displayed.
- Display Number How many items to display per page.
- > Message Age Display Default date filter for searching. May be changed on the fly.
- Session Timeout Inactive session timeout. Can be between 5 and 60 minutes.

# **GroupWise Proxy Support**

Retain supports the GroupWise proxy function. To enable it, check the box in the <u>Module Configuration</u> section. (NOTE: using proxy is useless if the user you wish to enable this function for is set to use offline authentication – found under the <u>core settings of the user</u>.)

## NOTE: The 'All User Rights Access' in GroupWise is NOT supported.

This function is used to enable a user to access the mailbox of another user. For example, if user B grants the right to user A to access their mailbox in the GroupWise client, then user A can "proxy" in to user B's mailbox.

Much the same way, if user A has proxy rights into user B's mailbox in GroupWise, and the function is enabled in Retain, then user A may select user B's mailbox for browsing or may search through user B's mailbox in the Search Screen.

In Retain, it is the MAIL READ right which grants access.

Retain uses the list of available mailboxes shown in the GroupWise client to determine which mailboxes will be made available to the logged in user (user A in our example). Thus, it is important that user A has logged into user B's mailbox as proxy using the GroupWise client before doing this in Retain. While user B might have granted the rights to user A, if user A has not yet logged in as proxy to user B's mailbox with GroupWise, then user B will not appear in user A's list of available accounts to proxy into.

Retain checks these proxy rights the first time you access a proxy users mailbox, then caches the information for 7 days as configured in the server Configuration – Miscellaneous tab. (Default is 7 days.)

If you have access to another mailbox by virtue of GroupWise proxy, then you will see that mailbox appear in the mailbox selector in the search screen or you may search through that mailbox as well.

# Groups

Once you have created users, you can group them and give them common rights. For instance, you can make a group called "Auditors" and this group will have rights to certain specific functions. If you then add users to this group, these users will get those specific rights in addition to the rights you have explicitly given them.

This is a great way to save t	me in managing the right	s of a large number of users.
-------------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------------

Overview	🖓 Groups Save Changes 🚽 🖑 (	3
Documentation Search Messages Audit Log System Log	auditor default	*
Data Collection Schedules Profiles Workers Jobs	Edit Group       The group 'default' is special. When users are created they are automatically assigned to the 'default' group. The rights, etc assigned to this group determine a user's initial rights and settings.         Remove Group       Remove Group	
Management Users Groups Deletion Management Configuration	Group audtor added. Group auditor	
Server Configuration Module Configuration Storage Manager Statistics Server Configuration Licensing	Core Settings Group Rights Maiboxes Miscellaneous Group Membership Remove Member Member george  Add Member	
	Comment Language English  Prevent members from changing password	
	Authentication Method Exchange Authentication 👻 🗌 Use Exclusively	

This is the main Groups administration screen. It's laid out just like the Users screen and rights are assigned the same way, for the most part.

In the Groups screen, you will see all defined groups .The group *default* is created when you install Retain. Users are automatically assigned to this group. If you want users to be part of another group, you must first create that group and then add users to it.

You will notice the drop-down list that allows you to select a member. If it says "(no users)", it means that all users are part of the currently selected group and that there are no more users available to add.

You may specify the default language used in the Search Interface for this group of users.

# Creating a New Group

If you want to create a new group, simply

- 1) Click "Add Group"
- 2) Type the name in "Group"
- 3) Click "Save Changes".
- 4) Change the properties of the group in the tabs below.

### **Group Rights**

Group Rights Rights granted to the group. Members of the group will inherit these rights, as well as ones explicitly assigned to ther Administrator level rights          Administrator level rights         Ø Access all audit logs         Ø Deletion Manager         Ø Apply or remove litigation hold         Ø Manage Server         Ø Manage Users and Groups         Ø Manage Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs         Ø Publish Messages         Ø Restore messages [Any Mailbox]         Ø Search all mailboxes         User level rights         Ø View/Save attachments         Ø View Personal audit log	Core Settings Group Rights Mailboxes	Miscellaneous
Administrator level rights          Access all audit logs         Deletion Manager         Apply or remove litigation hold         Manage Server         Manage Users and Groups         Manage Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs         Publish Messages         Restore messages [Any Malbox]         Search all maliboxes         User level rights         View/Save attachments         view personal audit log	Group Rights	
Administrator level rights          Access all audit logs         Deletion Manager         Apply or remove litigation hold         Manage Server         Manage Users and Groups         Manage Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs         Publish Messages         Restore messages [Any Malbox]         Search all maliboxes         User level rights         View/Save attachments         view personal audit log		
Image:       Image:         Image:       Image: <td< td=""><td>Rights granted to the group. Members of the gr</td><td>roup will inherit these rights, as well as ones explicitly assigned to them.</td></td<>	Rights granted to the group. Members of the gr	roup will inherit these rights, as well as ones explicitly assigned to them.
Image	Administrator level rights	
Image Very Itigation hold         Image Very Image Ve	Access all audit logs	
Image Server         Image Warkers and Groups         Image Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs         Image Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs         Image Publish Messages         Image Restore messages [Any Mailbox]         Image Search all mailboxes         User level rights         Image View/Save attachments         Image View personal audit log	Deletion Manager	
Image Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs         Image Workers, Profiles, Jobs         Image Workers, Profiles, Jobs         Image Workers, Profiles, Profiles, Jobs         Image Workers, Profiles, Profiles, Jobs         Image Workers,	Apply or remove litigation hold	
Image Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs	Manage Server	
Image: Publish Messages	Manage Users and Groups	
Image: Constraint of the second se	Manage Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs	
Search all mailboxes         User level rights         View/Save attachments         View personal audit log	Publish Messages	
User level rights          Image: Wiew/Save attachments         Image: Wiew personal audit log	Restore messages [Any Mailbox]	
View/Save attachments View personal audit log	Search all mailboxes	
View/Save attachments View personal audit log	User level rights	
Export Messages	View personal audit log	
	Export Messages	
V Forward Messages	Forward Messages	
V Print Messages	Print Messages	
Read Configuration (Redline)	Read Configuration (Redline)	
Restore messages [My Mailbox]	Restore messages [My Mailbox]	

In this tab, you define all the rights that will be common to all members of the group. These rights are ADDITIVE and will be in ADDITION to the rights you have explicitly given to the individual user.

For this reason, if you want to manage users as a group, you would typically not assign any individual rights. Rather, you would assign rights to their group. These rights have all the same meanings and function as the <u>users' rights</u>.

To log into and manage or monitor Workers, a User or Group must have the manage workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs right. To set or work with the Deletion Manager, the user must likewise have the Deletion Manager right, or they will not be able to modify those settings.

#### TIPS

Typically, you will not want a Redline<sup>™</sup> group but in case you have more than one Redline control center and you want to see which one is monitoring, you can assign Redline rights to a group.

Typically, you will want to make the default group's rights rather restrictive, granting very limited access by default. If you wanted a user to have more rights, you would simply assign them to another group or you could assign additional explicit rights.

By using groups, you can have groups of individuals with rights to totally different sets of archives. Users only get rights to the mailboxes you allow them.

"Redline" is a trade mark of GWAVA Inc., 100 Alexis Nihon, Suite 500, Saint Laurent, Quebec H4M 2P1

#### Mailboxes

Core Settings Group Rights Mailboxes Miscellaneous
Mailboxes
These are additional mailboxes beyond the primary mailbox that the members of the group may access. A non-admin user will only view messages addressed to these e-mail addresses (and to their primary mailbox), and might be able to forward/delete messages if given rights. An admin with <i>Search All Mailboxes</i> rights can access all mailboxes and perform any operation in the Search Interface.
Currently Selected
First Name     begins with
System Exchange   Show only users Show only recently cached items
Add Selected
Address Book
Enter criteria to search the cached addressbook.

This screen works exactly like the user's access to mailboxes. <u>Please see that section</u> on details on how to select which mailbox or mailboxes to assign to the group.

You use the address book selector to choose which mailbox or mailboxes to give the group access to.

By default, groups have access to NO mailboxes; users may only access their own mailboxes. If the user exists only in Retain (no GroupWise account) and their group has access to no mailboxes, then they will have access to no mailbox either.

Typically, you'll give group access to mailboxes only when you want all members of the group to be able to access a particular mailbox. Some examples could include a general sales account or accounts being audited by a group of auditors, a workgroup needing to access each other's archives, and so on.

# Groups – Miscellaneous

noups – Miscellaneous	~
Core Settings Group Rights Mailboxes Miscellaneous	-
Comment	
The default comment appended to forwarded messages can be set here.	
Comment	This is exactly like the users' miscellaneous configuration screen. It applies to all users in the group and users' explicit settings will override the group settings.
Date/Time Formats	
Defines how dates and times are displayed.	These settings govern the way the search interface works for the selected group. See
Date Day-ShortMonth-Year 🗸	more information about these settings in the users' miscellaneous section.
Time 24 Hour  Example: 15-Mar-2011 23:45	
Display Humber	
Display Number	
How many items to display per page	
Display Number 25 🗸	
Message Age Display	
How many days of messages should be displayed by default?	
Message Age Display Last 30 days 🗸	
Session Timeout	
Time in minutes, to expire an inactive login session.	
Time (minutes) 10	
	]

# **Deletion Management**

The Deletion Manager provides for the removal of mail from the archive according to the specified criteria. The Deletion management runs as a scheduled job in the archive, looking for, and processing or deleting messages that match the search terms. Mail removed from the archive is permanently deleted. Use this option with care. The Deletion Manager will not show up in your system menu if you have not granted the logged-in user the Deletion Management right, or have the litigation hold right. See <u>User</u> <u>Rights</u>. The Litigation Hold right allows users to go to the deletion management section and add or remove the Litigation Hold right for other users. They cannot modify other settings. Users with the deletion management right can view the litigation hold tab, but they cannot grant rights; it is read only.

# **Core Settings**

Here you enable and disable deletion jobs, and detail which actions they will take. When setting up a deletion job, you have the option to tell the job delete and report on the messages deleted, or to simply generate a report on the mail that will be removed from the database. The report function can be very handy to ensure that a job will not remove any mail that is needed, before the messages are actually deleted.

Overview	🗾 D	J Deletion Management									<del>2</del> 6
Documentation Search Messages											
Audit Log		Core Settings	Basic Options	Date Scope	Job Members	Notification	Schedule	Litigation Hold			
System Log Data Collection		Core Settings									
Schedules		Job Er	nabled								
Profiles		When processi	ng job Generate a	report but don't del	ete messages	-					
Exchange											

# **Basic Options**

This tab provides the criteria that the deletion job will use to identify messages to be deleted. This should look nearly identical to the profile of an archive job. The functions are the same. The item type, source, and status determine which messages are flagged for deletion.

letion Mar	agement							-	$\mathcal{Z}$
Core Settings	Basic Options	Date Scope	Job Members	Notification	Schedule	Litigation Hold			
Item Type									
By default, all it	em types are eligi	ible for deletion,	but you can rest	rict this.					
🗖 Mail 🗖 App	ointment 🔲 Note	e 🗖 Task 🗖 Pho	ne Message						
		these categories	, and all are eligib	le for deletion,	unless vou res	trict this.			
Messages are c	assified in one of	chose cacegones			,				
-	Sent Draft								
-	Sent 🗖 Draft 🛛								
Received	Sent 🗖 Draft 🛛	Posted	upon the setting	of various statu					

#### Data Scope

There are many dates that are contained in a mail system, and the deletion manager allows you to select different date ranges to identify the scope of the deletion manager. The setup is simple; the date range between the "Begin" and "End" dates will be targeted by the delete job.

Core Settings	Basic Op	tions	Date So	cope	Job Memb	pers	Noti	fication	Schedule	Litigation Hold	
Date Scope											
	-	_									correct date type. The I in Archive. The expiratior
date is related Delete me	ssages whe	ere Date	Stored in A	ctive in t							
date is related Delete me:		ere Date	Stored in a	ctive in t	the Job wi						
date is related Delete me:	ssages whe	ere Date 50 to specif	Stored in A Days ic dates	ctive in t Archive	the Job wi	nen the	e mes	sage wa			

The dates can be identified by the date filter. The Date filter allows you to specify the mail system or Retain message dates. The creation and delivered date are mail system dates. The date archived and expiration dates are set in Retain. The expiration date is tied to the job, and is set under the job section.

Date Stored in Retain Delivered Date Expiration Date Created Date

The Job Expiration option allows you to set an 'expiration date' that the mail no longer needs to be archived after. (Different States have different laws and requirements. Usually it is between 5 and 10 years.) The Deletion Management interface can utilize this expiration date to identify messages that are due for removal.

Core Settings	Basic Options	Date Scope	Job Members	Notification
Job Members				
Exclude Jou	urnaling Mailboxes			
Include these o	bjects:			
BESX (blackberry	.gwava.com)	- Add Mail S	erver	
Add User				
Exclude these of	objects:			
Add User				

Select the options as desired.

# Schedule

The last tab is the schedule tab. This allows you to automate and run a deletion job automatically on mail that has passed its

# **Job Members**

A delete job will only be active for selected users or a selected mail server. The Job Members tab allows you to include an entire mail server or group of users, while excluding specific users from the delete job.

Use this in conjunction with the Generate Report option under Core Settings to pinpoint the mail that will be included in the delete job.

# Notification

The reports, errors, and summaries of delete jobs can be sent to the listed address in the notification tab. Using the Generate Report option in Core Settings is useless unless you set this variable.

Core Settings	Basic Options	Date Scope	Job Mem	bers	Notification	Schedule	Lì
Notification							
You can have A	Archive e-mail a sun	nmary of operat	tions and/or	r errors t	hat occurred	when the jo	b cor
	SMTP Mail Server	192.168.1.12	21				
SMTP	Mail From Address	admin@comp	any.com				
	SMTP To Address	admin@comp	any.com				
	SMTP Username	sam					
	SMTP Password			(Passwo	ord is default)		
Mail	when errors occur						
Mail summary v	vhen job complete						
Test Connect	tion						

required archive duration. The options are to run this weekly or on a specific day of the month. The Deletion job is set to run at the same time as the rest of your scheduled maintenance. (Scheduled Maintenance is found under Server Configuration – <u>Maintenance</u> tab. Manual starting of a job is not currently supported.)

letion Mai	nagement								- J 2	?
Core Settings	Basic Options	Date Scope	Job Members	Notification	Schedule	Litigation Hold				
Schedule										
	executes during t ny messages to de		period on a weel	kly or monthly b	asis. A deletio	on job can take a v	very long time to run, a	nd be quite inter	sive,	

## **Litigation Hold**

The Litigation Hold tab grants the rights to users who will be able to set a hold on messages in the message archive.

) De	eletion Man	agement							,	$\mathcal{Z}$	2
											1
	Core Settings	Basic Options	Date Scope	Job Members	Notification	Schedule	Litigation Hold				
	Litigation Ho	d									
								can apply a hold on a per it ed when running a deletion		the	
	Add User										

Any official auditors, legal representatives, system administrators, or user may be added to this list. These accounts will be able to set and lift any legislative hold in the system, and therefore this is not a generally granted right and should be restricted to only specified users. Because of the power of this right it is granted separately from the usual rights for users.

To add a user to the legislative hold list, select the 'Add User' button to open the 'Select Mailbox' window.

Select the source system for the user and enter search criteria. After searching, select the desired user or users and select the 'Ok' button to add them to the list. Save all changes.

Select Mailboxes	;
Add Selected Ok Cancel	
Currently Selected	
Criteria	
First Name V begins with V Search	
System Exchange Show only users Show only recently cached items	
Address Book	
Enter criteria to search the cached addressbook.	

# Configuration

# **Server Configuration**

The overall operation of Retain is configured in this section.

verview	Server Configu	iration						Save Changes 📙 没
ocumentation earch Messages	Communications	Index	Storage	Accounts	Maintenance	Logging	Miscellaneous	
idit Log Istem Log	Database Conne	ectivity						
ta Collection	The message stor	re data is st	ored on a d	database serve	er.			
hedules	To successfully cr	eate the ta	bles, the d	atabase serve	must already be	running, wit	h a database named	archive created. Be sure to specify:
Profiles orkers Jobs	must be in	cluded in th	ne URL.		-		achine as Archive, th Il rights to the datal	he IP address or host name of the machin base you created.
anagement	Messag	e Store DB				Col	nfiguration DB	
sers oups	Driver	5.0,5.1,5.5	•					•
letion Management	Database URL jdbc:m	nysql://locali	nost/archiv	edb		jd	bc:mysql://localhost	/archivedb
nfiguration rver Configuration	Database User archive Account	euser				ar	chiveuser	-
odule Configuration orage Manager atistics Server Configuration	Database User Password	•••••	(Pa	assword is set)	)	•		(Password is set)
ensing		e values for Server 19			otifications. If th	e mail server	is not set, forwardir	ıg is disabled
	SMTP Mail From A			-				
		Address adr						
		ername sar						
	SMTP Pa	ssword ••		•••		(Password	is set)	
	Mail when error	s occur						
	That this area							

Each tab will be explained below.

Along the top, you will see configuration options for the Retain server and workers known to this server.

The most important topic is communications. These are the settings you have set when you initially installed Retain. You may make changes here.

After changing any communications options, it is strongly recommended that Tomcat be restarted immediately.

# Communications

The settings for the Communications tab are set in the initial setup of Retain. These include the connection to the SQL Database server, the Retain database, and the notification, SMTP information. If any changes in the system or corrections are needed, they should be configured here.

### Index

The Index tab allows the management of the indexing engine as well as the ability to decide what kinds of attachments are indexed, and what size.

Communications	Index	Storage	Accounts	Maintenance	Logging	Miscellaneous	
Indexing							
Here, you adjust t							
<ul> <li>The next</li> </ul>	column is t	he entry itse	elf, filename e	on a filename ex xtension or MIME	type.		 an ideal in Estan
versions of	Archive.					chment. New extr	 rovided in future
							 t be processed at all.
Note: If an exten except the "exale "exalead" handler	ad" handle	er. For Exalea	id, regardless	of the extractor	selected, th	e text extraction	ny appropriate extractor by Exalead. The

Because Exalead is a much more robust indexing engine it requires its own server and resources. As such, when Exalead is selected as the indexing engine, a connection address and starting base port are required. The default BASEPORT is 10000. To ensure that the connection to the Exalead server is working, the 'Test Connection' button may be selected, which triggers Retain to contact the Exalead server. The results should shortly appear as a small notification window in your browser.

Lucene is hosted locally on the same machine as the Retain Server, and requires no further configuration, but does not have the same options or the extent of the capabilities as the Exalead engine does.

Current Indexing Engine: Lucene 🛛

The indexing engine can be changed between the two engines, but requires the index to be re-created. Recreating the indexes is a time consuming process and should not be done unless required. Searches of the Retain Archive during the index re-creation or migration process may not contain all results.

For details on how to change from one index to another, see the appendix section on <u>switching the</u> <u>index engine</u>.

You can control what Retain indexes here. You may add as many items as you wish to the list of attachment types to index. **Note the explanation at the top of the table.** The items are listed (in order) by type, extension, archived form (extractor used), and maximum stream size and file size. You choose whether to index the attachment based on its filename extension or its MIME type (the content itself). You also choose which extractor to use to index the attachment. Retain supports HTML, RTF, TEXT, XML, OpenXML – (MS Office 2007.docx), OpenOffice2, Word Perfect documents, Excel files, .DOC, and .PDF under the Lucene indexing engine, while Retain supports many more under Exalead. (Because of high CPU, memory, and performance requirements, MS Word and Adobe PDF are not indexed by default and must be enabled to be indexed. If you need to index these items, the allotted memory should be increased. Indexing these items will slow down the indexing process.) Select as many as you need. If an attachment type common in the system which needs to be indexed, but which does not already exist in the system, it may be added by using the 'add' row.

Force Indexing tells the server to index items that are not currently indexed. This queries the system for the top 500,000 items that are not currently indexed, and starts the indexer working if it is not currently working.

Indexing							
Here, you adjust the different types of items to be i	ndexed. You may add, delete, or edit items.						
<ul> <li>The first column indicates if the entry is base</li> <li>The next column is the entry itself, filename</li> </ul>							
<ul> <li>The third column indicates the built-in extract</li> </ul>	tor to use to process the attachment. New extractors may be provided in future versions of Retain.						
	num size to process, with -1 indicating no limit (this should rarely be used). The Stream Size is an upper limit on Idicates any file above this size should not be processed at all.						
Note: If an extension or mime type is not listed, the indexing engine will not index the contents. For Lucene, use any appropriate extractor except the "exalead" handler. For Exalead, regardless of the extractor selected, the text extraction will be handled by Exalead. The "exalead" handler can be used to indicates items that should only be indexed by Exalead.							
Extension     Item:	exalead 💉 Stream Size: 208400 File Size: 1048576 Add						
Extension 💌 Item: log	text 💌 Stream Size: 1048576 File Size: 1048576 Delete						
Extension 💽 Item: eml	text 💙 Stream Size: 1048576 File Size: 1048576 Delete						
Extension 💽 Item: docx	openxml 💌 Stream Size: 2048576 File Size: 2048576 Delete						
Extension 💌 Item: html	html 🔽 Stream Size: 1048576 File Size: 1048576 Delete						
Extension 💽 Item: cfg	text 🔽 Stream Size: 1048576 File Size: 1048576 Delete						
Extension 💽 Item: xml	xml 🔽 Stream Size: 1048576 File Size: 1048576 Delete						
Extension 💽 Item: rtf	rtf 🛛 Stream Size: 1048576 File Size: 1048576 Delete						
Extension 💽 Item: odt	ooffice 🗸 Stream Size: 2048576 File Size: 2048576 Delete						
Extension 💽 Item: txt	text 🔽 Stream Size: 1048576 File Size: 1048576 Delete						
Extension 💽 Item: odp	ooffice 🔽 Stream Size: 2048576 File Size: 2048576 Delete						
Extension 💽 Item: Ods	ooffice 🔽 Stream Size: 2048576 File Size: 2048576 Delete						
Extension 💌 Item: doc	word 🔽 Stream Size: 2048576 File Size: 2048576 Delete						
Evention Therei Party							
Force Indexing Now							

#### Storage

Storage         The configuration database, indices, XML files, and the archive files are stored under the storage path which should be on a highly reliable storage device with plenty of disk space.         The standard storage engine places archive files under the storage path. You may change the storage path on this screen; the storage engine can be changed from the Storage Configuration menu.         Storage Engine datastore_process         Base Storage path /var/opt/storage/store         Advanced Settings         Encryption (none)	Communications	Index	Storage	Accounts	Maintenance	Logging	Miscellaneous			
storage device with plenty of disk space. The standard storage engine places archive files under the storage path. You may change the storage path on this screen; the storage engine can be changed from the Storage Configuration menu. Storage Engine datastore_process Base Storage path /var/opt/storage/store Advanced Settings	Storage									
engine can be changed from the Storage Configuration menu. Storage Engine datastore_process Base Storage path /var/opt/storage/store Advanced Settings	-				e archive files are	stored unde	er the storage pat	h which shoul	d be on a highly r	eliable
Base Storage path /var/opt/storage/store Advanced Settings						th. You may	change the stora	ge path on thi	s screen; the sto	rage
Advanced Settings	Storage Engin	e datastor	e_process							
	Base Storage pat	h /var/op	t/storage/sto	ore						
Encryption (none) -										
	Encryption (no	ne) 🔻								
Compression (always on)	Compression (alw	ays on)								

The default storage path for your Retain archives is listed here. (See <u>About Storage Paths</u> and <u>Storage</u> <u>manager</u> sections.)

Retain uses a **hybrid storage system**. All message headers and metadata is stored in the database but all message text and attachments are stored as files on the file system in the location listed here (and subdirectories). This is done a little like GroupWise, where the OFFILES directory stores Binary Large Objects (anything larger than 2KB). In the case of Retain, this is transparent to the user and you may choose whether to encrypt this data. If it is stored in a location accessible ONLY to the Retain Server, then encryption is not strictly necessary.

#### Accounts

Communications Index Storage Accounts	Maintenance L	Logging	Miscellaneous
Account Management			
You may expire unused accounts, disable new account	ts from being create	ed automa	tically, and restrict some users from logging in.
Expire unused accounts after how many days (0=never)	0		
Disable new accounts			
Prohibited Logins			Address Add
You may turn on a password strength policy, if you windwidual messaging systems. Password strength: Will accept any password Will accept any password	ant to enforce stror	ng passwo	rds in setting user passwords. Keep in mind, these passwords may be overridden by

## Open System vs. Closed System

Normally, Retain lets all mail system users log in. This is considered to be an "open" system. When that happens, Retain will check to see if a Retain account already exists and if not, it will create a new account for them and assign them to the group *default*.

Sometimes, you don't want certain users to have access to the Retain archives. In this case, you may add these users to the list of **Prohibited Logins**. You do so by entering their name in the Address field and click "Add".

To make a "closed" Retain system, simply click on "Disable New Accounts". If you use this option, it means that you will have to manually create accounts in Retain for authorized users. In other words, the only people who can access your system will be people who you specifically create an account for.

In Retain, user accounts expire after 30 days of inactivity by default. You may choose the number of days or choose 0 for "accounts never expire".

See "<u>User Rights</u>" for more information.

#### **Password Strength**

User-created passwords may be controlled for strength. By default, Retain accepts any password set by users. To require a higher security password, select the higher level desired. Requirements for the low, medium, and high settings are defined as:

Low

Must be between 5 and 15 characters in length, with at least 0 lower case characters, at least 0 upper case characters, at least 0 numerical characters, and at least 0 special characters. Medium Must be between 5 and 20 characters in length, with at least 1 lower case characters, at least 1 upper case characters, at least 1 numerical characters, and at least 0 special characters. High

Must be between 8 and 20 characters in length, with at least 2 lower case characters, at least 2 upper case characters, at least 2 numerical characters, and at least 2 special characters. In addition the password will be checked against a dictionary.

#### **Intruder Lockout**

Intruder Lockout	
Enable this feature to temporarily lockout an account that may be the subject of an illegal entry attempt. You may clear loo Tomcat	ck outs using the button below, or by restarting
Enable Intruder Lockout?	
Number of invalid login attempts 3 💌	
Time interval (minutes) 5 👻	
If triggered, lock account for this period (minutes) $^{10}$ $\blacktriangleright$	
Clear lock outs	

Accounts may be locked if multiple failed attempts are detected, according to the specified time window. This is useful to deny password cracking attempts on the server.

To enable Intruder Lockout, select the checkbox next to the 'Enable Intruder Lockout' option and save the changes. All changes will be immediate as soon as the save button is selected.

If a user has locked their account and requires immediate access to the system, all lockouts may be cleared. To clear any locked accounts, select the 'clear lock outs' button at the bottom of the page. There is no need to save changes; the clear command is immediate.

# Maintenance

Maintaining a Retain system involves many tasks:

- Backup Configuration (Embedded) Database
- Compress Configuration Database
- indexing (All Indexes)

These items are all controlled here.

Communications	Index	Storage	Accounts	Maintenance	Logging	Miscellaneous	
-Maintenance/Ca	ching						
You may automat time. so no jobs n Note that with th	nay be act	ive at this p	oint.				lices are also backed up. The Retain Server is offline at this
Enab	le Backup	of Indices	V (every day	y) 🗸 weekly	•		
Enable	e Index Op	otimization	V (every day	y) 👻 weekly	-		
Purge exported f	les when (	older than	12	hours			
Run m	aintain pro	cedure at	01 🚽 : 00 🚽				
Las	t Backup o	of Indexes 1	2-Mar-2011 0	1:02:00			
Las	t Index Op	otimization 1	2-Mar-2011 0	1:02:00			
<b>Ignore Domains</b> You might want s		mains (and t	cheir child POs	and users) to be	completely	ignored - not cacl	ned, not stored, etc.
Ignored Domains				Don		Selected Domain	Add _

This configuration database – the "Embedded" database:

- should be backed up regularly
- contains your system address book
- > also contains key information used by Retain

Configure how often it gets backed up here.

You can also configure how often indexes get backed up and how often the indexes are optimized for speed.

Retain also lists a history of backups and maintenance here.

# Note: This maintenance section does NOT involve backup or maintenance of the data store. You must back that up yourself with your normal backup tools.

You must backup:

- SQL Database
- File System where your data is stored. (see index/storage for location)

#### **Ignore Domains**

Ignore Domains	
	er child POs and users) to be completely ignored - not cached, not stored, etc. The reason? GroupWise has the capability to add non-GroupWise commonly used, for example, to add internet addresses to the System Address Book or to Distribution Lists. However these objects cause nnot log into them.
Ignored Domains	Remove Selected Domain Domain Add

Some mail systems allow for the addition of non-system, or external domains. Sometimes, you might do this to add external domains to the mail system address book. However, the mail system cannot pull up e-mail from these domains and you may want to tell Retain to ignore references to these external domains to avoid wasting time during data collection.

Specify these domains in this window.

### Logging

Configure the system logging here. Normally, you want verbose logging. Diagnostic is ordinarily done just for troubleshooting purposes.

Comm	unications	Index	Storage	Accounts	Maintenance	Notification	Logging	Miscellaneous
-Logg	ina							
33	<b>y</b>		E 11 IS					
		Loggin	g Enabled?					
	Log level Compress logs?							
	a the second		ve old logs					
	wner	i age exce	eds (days)	10				

You also specify how long to keep logs here. By default, logs are deleted after 10 days. Logs may be compressed to save disk space.

#### **Auditing Records**

Retain now will create an auditing record of all actions, specified by the user, which are taken on a specific piece of mail. Auditing records can be removed automatically after a specified length of time. The variable is set in days. All of the options associated with this feature are found under the Server Configuration page, Logging tab.

Auditing				
Retain audits all access to messages by default, allowing you to trace when and who opened a message, forwarded a message etc.				
Some advanced auditing options are disabled by default, because they would generate enormous audit logs. Enable them with care. Also, consider clearing your audit logs regularly (see below) or exporting your logs from the audit table on your SQL Server.				
Days before audit records are removed (0=never remove) 0				
Advanced auditing options				
Login Changed User/Group				
Changed Data Collection 🔲 Searched 🔅 Mailbox Switch				
Audited Server Config Change Exported				
Published				

This logging option creates very detailed logs for the options selected, and it is very important to know that if every option is turned on, the logs can become extremely large. It is highly recommended that an expiration date is set for the logs, so that they are automatically removed from the system to avoid filling up your disk space. Selecting all options for logging will also adversely affect performance. Do not select all the options at one time unless requested by Support.

#### **Miscellaneous**

Communications Inde	x Storage	Accounts	Maintenance	Logging	Miscellaneous			
Miscellaneous								
You can enable or disabl	You may change the default Worker password, which is assigned to all Workers when they are created (but can be individually overridden). You can enable or disable XML Export, which creates XML representations of each message as they are created. Generally this is not recommended unless you absolutely need this feature - it uses a lot of disk space, and slows down the Server.							
Default Worker Passwor	i	•••• (F	Password is set)					
Export XM	L							
Server Friendly Nam	e Server							
recommended unless yo Default Worker Passwor Export XM	absolutely nee	ed this feature	- it uses a lot of					

You may choose the default worker password here. One is automatically generated for you when you create a worker but you may change the password here if you like.

#### Export XML

This XML Export function is included in Retain in case you have an XML compliance mandate. You enable it here.

When selected, each attachment will have an XML export file of its parent message. In other words, an XML representation of the metadata is created and linked to the blobs as the messages are stored. There's nothing more done.

Ordinarily, you would not want to do this because it consumes enormous quantities of disk space, loads up your file system and degrades performance.

When you do NOT use the XML export function, you will benefit from Retain's single-instance message storage and data compression to save disk space and improve performance.

# **Module Configuration**

Please see the module configuration section in the initial setup section of the manual.

# Storage Manager / Storage Engine

Retain Supports the ability to change the location or engine used to store the archived mail.

Overview	😵 Storage Manager 🗧 🚽	$\mathcal{Z}$	
Documentation			
Search Messages Audit Log	Here, you may configure the storage engine to used with Archive. The Standard engine stores all attachment and e-mail pieces directly on standard drive mapping. This engine works with all platforms.	а	
System Log	Other engines include:		
Data Collection Schedules Profiles	<ul> <li>Centera - Used to store files on the EMC Centera storage devices.</li> <li>NetApp SnapLock - Used for configuring the NetApp SnapLock feature. This is optional - NetApp works without it. It is used to ens compliance.</li> </ul>	ure	
Workers	Regardless of which engine you select, substantial disk space may be consumed locally as well. (The default drive-based engine consumes t most space).	he	
Management	Restarting Tomcat after changing the Storage Engine configuration is strongly advised.		
Users Groups	Storage Engine Enhanced Standard Engine. Store directly on locally accessible drives.		
Deletion Management	Enhanced Standard Engine		1
Configuration			
Server Configuration Module Configuration	The standard engine does not require further configuration here. However, you can alter the the storage paths in the Storage tab of the Server Configuration menu option.	e	
Storage Manager Statistics Server Configuration Licensing	In addition, if desired, you may define and remove "partitions" here.		

To change the storage option settings which were created during the initial setup of Retain, simply select the different storage engine of your choice.

If the Standard Engine is selected, then the Standard Engine window is displayed. This details the setting location for the default storage location, under Server Configuration, <u>Storage tab</u>.

The other three options are: Legacy Engine Centera Storage Device Enhanced Standard Engine. Store directly on locally accessible drives.

Enhanced Standard Engine. Store directly on locally accessible drives.
Legacy Engine (pre 3.0). Store directly on locally accessible drives
Centera Storage Device
NetApp SnapLock

#### **Enhanced Standard Engine**

NetApp SnapLock

The Enhanced standard storage engine is the standard storage option which should be selected for all new installations of Retain. The storage engine utilizes locally accessible drives and media. When selecting this option, make sure that storage requirements will be easily met, size or capacity increased, and managed.

#### Legacy Engine

The legacy engine works as a seamless connection to the 2.x line of Retain, and is available as a bridge for upgraded devices and legacy support systems.

#### **Centera Storage Device**

The Centera Storage option simply requires you to put the storage server IP address or DNS name, and the authentication method.

Centera
Server Connectivity Settings
Note: The hostname/ip may be suffixed with a :port entry, and you may enter more than one hostname. For example,
mycenterbox.com:4256,152.62.65.11,152.62.65.12?name=2profile3.secret=2profile3 is a valid entry. At least one hostname must be
entered.
entered.
Centera Server/IP
Server Access settings
Server Access securitys
With Contain devices you have these entires for with entiretime.
With Centera devices, you have three options for authentication:
• Account which are shown as a constrained by the best of the second
<ul> <li>Anonymous, which requires no password, but is insecure.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Credentialed, in which you supply a traditional username and password.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>PEA, in which you supply a file system path accessible by Retain of the PEA file you encrypted to provide authentication information. A</li> </ul>
good place to put this is in the license directory, (/var/opt/beginfinite/retain/license).
Authentication Method Anonymous M

The different Authentication options are PEA and Credentialed. The PEA requires the full path to the PEA file. For a credentialed authentication, simply input the username and the password for the Centera server.

Authentication Method PEA 💌

Authentic	ation Method Credentialed 💌
User	
Password	

# NetApp SnapLock

NetApp is fully supported with SnapLock for storage. Note the information in the option. To enforce WORM rules you MUST set the <u>Job Expiration</u> feature. Also set the IP address, username, password, and the correct path to the server. THE PATH MUST BE SET IN NETAPP FORMAT.

NetApp SnapLock	
SnapLock settings	
If you enable SnapLock, then as items are stored on the NetApp applianc according to your Job options. This effectively enforces WORM rules. You none of the parameters on this screen need to be filled out.	
A note about the path requested below: it is not a Linux, Windows, or U path and a share path. It uses the NetApp format, and must point to the Technical Support for more information on this or on enabling SnapLock.	
Enable SnapLock? No	
NetApp Server/IP	
Port 80	
Admin User	
Admin Password	
Base path to archive directory (example: /vol/myvolname/archive)	

#### **Partitions**

Retain also supports the ability to define a different storage location, through the partitioning option. **Partitioning is only available when Storage is set to the 'local' drive.** To access the partitions option click on "partitions" in the Enhanced or Standard Engine window. Ideally, this option would **only** be used to archive

Partitions DS						
Creating a partition allows you to direct all new attachment blobs to a new storage device. (Your old device might be running out of space, or you might prefer to split the storage on a yearly basis etc.). Retain retrieves and stores blobs based upon the partition's date threshold.						
will make all of that d	ata completely inacces		ple, deleting a partition that contains data ad to another partition. Carefully read the			
Current path used for storage: /opt/archive/2012 Begin Date Name Path Delete						
02-Aug-2012 22:25:43	first partition	/opt/archive/2012	Delete			
You may add a partition below. Just enter a name and the full path to the directory to store blobs under.           New Partition Name         new partition           New Partition Path						

to a new, larger, location when the current storage path has been filled, or to separate mail storage between years. (I.e. /archive/2008; /archive/2009)

A Retain system without a specified partition location will store all mail in the default storage location. This is defined in the Server Configuration menu, under the Storage tab mentioned previously. The default location is set during the initial install.

### **READ THE BOLD WARNING ON CHANGING PARTITIONS!**

You may only specify one new partition at a time. After you have entered the new partition information, click 'save changes'. *Creation or changes to a partition requires Tomcat to be restarted*. When adding a Partition on Linux, the path needs to be created manually on the Linux Server before specifying the path within Retain. Ensure that the permissions for the new path are given to Tomcat.

Once Tomcat has been restarted, the new partition can be viewed, edited, or deleted from this window.

Partitions are listed with their Begin Date, Name, and Path. The Begin Date is the creation date. A partition is used to store all archived mail from the moment it is created

Because of how Retain indexes and tracks messages that are archived, deleting a partition can lead to catastrophic data loss. Do not delete an active storage partition or location without first consulting support.

If a partition is deleted Retain will look for the archived mail that was stored in the deleted partition to be stored in the default storage location. (This is defined in Server Configuration, under the <u>Storage tab</u>.) Removing a designated partition in the management console does not delete the storage directories or

- Partitions					
Creating a partition allows you to direct all new attachment blobs to a new storage device. (Your old device might be running out of space, or you might prefer to split the storage on a yearly basis etc.). Retain retrieves and stores blobs based upon the partition's date threshold.					
Deleting or adding a partition can easily result in the loss of data. For example, deleting a partition that contains data, will make all of that data completely inaccessible to Retain, unless it is moved to another partition. Carefully read the user manual and/or consult with Technical Support before proceeding.					
Current path used for storage: /var/opt/beginfinite/retain/archive					
There are no partitions defined currently. All blobs will be stored to the default storage path configured in Server Configuration.					
You may add a partition below. Just enter a name and the full path to the directory to store blobs under.					
New Partition Name new partition New Partition Path					

data on the hard drive or SAN, but it does disconnect Retain from the storage location.

All partition changes are logged in the partition.log file, located in the backup directory specified in Server Configuration. (By default this is located in <your storage location>/backup)

# **Stubbing Server**

Overview	🗇 Stubbing Server	J 2	2
Documentation Search Messages Audit Log System Log	Stubbing is a new feature in GroupWise 8, where a message item may be "stubbed" removing the message permanently from GroupWise, and replacing an item (a stub) that connects to Retain to access the message. Effectively, the user has transparent access to the stubbed tem from their GroupWise cli the stub behaves largely as if a native GroupWise item was still there. Consult the user manual for detailed instructions and the pros and cons of stubbing.		*
Data Collection	Core Settings Logging Connection		
Schedules			
Profiles	Basics		
Exchange			
GroupWise	Choose whether to enable the stubbing server. If it is not enabled, it will not accept requests from any GroupWise POA. In addition, for security purpose	s. vou	
Workers	may enter a comma delimited list of IP addresses, and only these POAs will be serviced.		
Jobs			
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Enable Stubbing Server		
Management	Accept POA connections only from these IP Addresses:		
Users			
Groups			
Deletion Management	- Interval		
Court and the second se			
Configuration			
Server Configuration	How often should the stubbing server poll for configuration changes?		
Module Configuration	Poll for configuration every 10 minutes		
Storage Manager			
Stubbing Server			
Licensing			

To set up stubbing, you must perform the following tasks:

- 1. You must be running GroupWise 8.0HP1 Post Office Agent(s). Once enabled, the stubbing process cannot be reversed. Stubbing requires GroupWise 8.0HP1. Previous versions of GroupWise do not contain critical stability fixes.
- 2. ConsoleOne must be configured as discussed below.
- 3. Retain job profiles must have Stubbing turned on. (see the Profiles section)
- 4. Stubbing server must be installed and setup as discussed below. (For install see your platform install guide.)

# **ConsoleOne GroupWise settings**

For the Retain Server to function, GroupWise must be told where the Stub Server is located. In ConsoleOne;

- Connect to the domain and highlight the domain or GroupWise system.
- Select Tools | GroupWise System Operations
   | Trusted Applications
- Select Retain and click Edit.
- Select "Allow Access to Archive Server"

CEdit Trusted Applicati	on 🗶
Name:	Retain
Description:	eSecurity by Beginfinite
TCP/IP Address:	
🔲 Requires SSL	
🏳 Provides Message Rete	ention Service
Allow access to Archi	ve Service
Archive Service addre	ess: 192.168.2.3:48080
C Archive Service n	equires SSL
	O <u>K</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- Put the address or DNS name of the Stub Server and the correct port as shown. (48080)
- Click OK and exit the rest of the windows.

Your settings should look the same as the settings pictured here with your specific DNS or IP address for the Stub Server.

CEdit Trusted Applicatio	on X					
Name:	Retain					
Description:	eSecurity by Beginfinite					
TCP/IP Address:						
Requires SSL						
I Provides Message Retention Service						
Allow access to Archiv	/e Service					
Archive Service addre	ss:					
Archive Service re	quires SSL					
	O <u>K</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp					

We also need to change the settings in the preferences menu:

- Connect to the domain and highlight the domain or GroupWise system.
- Select Tools | GroupWise System Operations
   | System Preferences...
- Ensure that Retain is set under the Archive Service Settings as a trusted Application. Select it if it is not already selected.

C GroupWise System Preferences	×
Admin Preferences   Routing Options   External Access Rights   Nickname Setting Default Password   Admin Lockout Settings   Archive Service Settings	s
Archive Service Trusted Applications:	
O <u>K</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	
O <u>K</u>	

Set the Post Office Remote File Server Settings.

Enter the properties of the Post office. The settings should look as they do here.

Retain should be listed as the Default Archive Service Trusted Application. If it is not set as the default, override and select Retain.

Properties of po		×
GroupWise   NDS Rights   Other Other	Rights to Files and Folders	
Software Distribution Directory:	MY_SYSTEM	-
Access Mode:	Client/Server Only	-
Delivery Mode:	Use App Thresholds	-
Max Age for Address Book Updates:	15 🗲 days	
🔲 Disable Live Move		
Restore Area:	(Not Set)	
Default Archive Service Trusted Application:	Retain	
Cverride	<none></none>	~
Remote File Server Settings		
Remote User Name:		
Remote Password:	Set Password	
Page Options	OK Cancel Apply	Help

## **Retain Stubbing Settings**

Job profiles must have Stubbing enabled for the Server to function. See the <u>Profiles section</u> for details. The Stub Server must first be enabled in order to allow access to the bootstrap file required for communications. Set the interval as desired. (10 min. is lowest recommended setting. Anything lower may be unnecessary.)

Core Settings Logging Connection Bootstrap				
Basics				
Choose whether to enable the stubbing server. If it is not enabled, it will not accept requests from any GroupWise POA. In addition, for security purposes, you may enter a comma delimited list of IP addresses, and only these POAs will be serviced.				
Enable Stubbing Server?				
Accept POA connections only from these IP Addresses:				
Interval				
How often should the stubbing server poll for configuration changes?				
Poll for configuration every 10 minutes				

If you wish to restrict connections to the Stub Server, input the IP address(es) of all the Post Offices that the Stub Server will service. Use commas to separate multiple addresses.

Save changes before continuing.

#### Logging

Log levels higher than Normal are not necessary unless troubleshooting or working with Support. It is strongly recommended to compress and remove logs after a time period to protect system space. Set time to desired level.

Core Settings	Logging	Connectio	n			
Logging Options						
	Loggi	ng Enabled	<b>V</b>			
	Log level					
	<b>V</b>					
	Remo	ve old logs	<b>V</b>			
Wh	en age exce	eds (days)	10			

#### Connection

The connection to the Retain Server is very important. This must be set to the address of the Retain Server, and is automatically filled out for you. Verify that the Retain Server is located at the specified address and is accessible. Generally you may leave this section default as the Stub Server should be installed local to the Retain Server. If your Retain Server IP address is assigned by DHCP, change the Host Name to the DNS name or localhost (127.0.0.1).

Core Settings	Logging	Connection	
Retain Server (	Connectio	n	
mportant to not	e that you	are specifying the l	o connect to the Retain Server. It is highly recommended that you use a DNS host name for the Host Name. I JRL from the point of view of the <b>Stubbing Server contacting the Retain Server</b> , which may or may not o reach the Stubbing Server or Retain Server.
Serve	r Protocol	http 👻	
Retain Server H	lost Name	64.34.151.106	
Retain S	erver Port	48080	
	anver Dath	/RetainServer	
Retain Se	erver Faun	Trecomberver	

When you have finished configuring the Stub Server, Save your changes and select the Bootstrap tab. (The bootstrap tab will not be available unless the Stubbing Server has been enabled and settings saved.)

Core Settings Logging	Connection Bootstrap
Boot Strap	
correctly. You may copy it /RetainStubServer)	vare needs a special "bootstrap" configuration file copied to its working directory before it can function manually or use a web browser to upload the file. (http:// <retainstubserveripaddress>:48080</retainstubserveripaddress>
Download File	

Download and save the bootstrap file.

Open a new browser tab or window, and browse to the Stub Server. The Stub Server answers to the following address (The address is case sensitive):

http://<IP address of StubServer>:48080/RetainStubServer

You should see a window like the one	Retain Stubbing Server
pictured here.	The Stubbing Server needs to be configured in the Retain Server web interface. Once it has been configured a "bootstrap" file needs to be downloaded and applied here.
<ul> <li>Click 'Browse' and browse to the location where you saved the bootstrap file.</li> <li>Select the "StubConfig.cfg" file and select 'Open'.</li> </ul>	Without a bootstrap file the Stubbing Server will not know how to find the Retain server. After applying the bootstrap file any configuration changes made in the Retain Server will be polled by this worker. You will not have to reconfigure the Stubbing Server manually unless you change the Connectivity settings configured in the Retain Server. Upload Bootstrap Configuration BrowseUpload File
Select the 'Upload File' button.	More Information
After uploading the configuration file, the Stub Server will alert you that it requires authentication from a user with	To download the bootstrap file and upload it here: • Open the Retain server's web interface. • Select the Stubbing Server • Navigate to the Bootstrap tab. • Select 'Download File'. • Save the file to your desktop. • Return to this interface. • Click 'Browse' and locate the file on your desktop. • Click 'Upload File' below.
the "Manage Workers" right. Click 'Continue'.	

Configuration Complete. From now on, you'll have to log in as a user (such as the initially created admin user) with the Manage Workers right.

Continue

We can now Login to the Stub Server. You must Login with a user that has sufficient rights. See the <u>User Rights</u> section to add or remove rights.

🗮 Retain			
	Login		
Pa	ssword		

The Stub Server Interface is nearly identical to the Worker interface. You may check for updated versions of the Stub Server or manually trigger server polling by selecting the Refresh 'Configuration now' button.

😸 Retain 🦉 Wekome, admin   L				
Configuration Server Connection Status Sched	uler			
Stub Server Configuration				
URI to Server	http://192.168.0.101:48080/RetainServer/			
Stub Server Version	1.7.0			
Memory Free/Max/Total	233775/1040512/260224			
Check for New Version				
Refresh Configuration now				
Click "Refresh Configuration now" to prompt the Stu	ubbing Server to poll for configuration changes right now.			
5	r. If the configuration must be changed in the future, replace the configuration file at /opt/beginfinite			

Check the **Server Connection** tab to verify the connection to the Server.

Configuration Server Connection Status Scheduler

Server Connection

Successfully connected to Retain server

#### Status

The Status tab gives statistics about up-time and function.

Status 4	
Up since	Fri Nov 21 08:45:19 MST 2008
Successful Logins	0
Failed Logins	0
Message Served	0
Attachments Served	0
Communication Errors (POA)	0
Communication Errors (Retain)	0
Cached Sessions	0

## Scheduler

The scheduler tab contains the configuration details sent by the Server this tab is mainly used for Support.

Configuration	Server Connection	Status	Scheduler	
Scheduler	Status			
To see advanced information regarding the thread scheduler, click here.				
			·	

# **Statistics Server Configuration**

Retain comes equipped with a separate statistics monitoring server. The Statistics Server may be installed on the same or a different physical or virtual machine as the Retain Server.

Overview	Stats Server	,	æ	2
Documentation Search Messages Audit Log System Log	The Stats Server, if enabled, can collect various statistics from the Workers and generate useful reports. Core Settings Logging Connection Notification			~
Data Collection				
Schedules Profiles Workers Jobs	Basics Choose whether to enable the Stats Server. If it is not enabled, statistics information will not be stored for Archive jobs. In addition security purposes, you may enter a comma delimited list of IP addresses, and only these Server will be allowed to update the statist			
Management Users Groups Deletion Management	Enable Data Collection       Days to archive job information       14       Run maintenance at (hour)       02 - :00       Update interval for Server Statistics (minutes)       10			
Configuration Server Configuration Module Configuration	Accept Server connections only from these IP Addresses:			
Storage Manager Statistics Server Configuration Licensing	Interval How often should the stats server poll the Archive Server for configuration changes? Poll for configuration every 10 minutes			

The Statistics Server functions much like the Retain Worker in that it is installed as a separate entity and requires connection information from the Retain Server. Additional security is provided through the option to specify exactly which IP address(es) the Retain Server will allow a connection from. Separate with commas the IP addresses allowed if more than one. No mail data is transferred through this connection, only server statistic information.

The Core Settings, Logging, Connection and Notification sections of the Statistics Server configuration work identically to the Worker connection settings, and should be filled-out accordingly. Most server implementations will require little to no modification to these settings save the notification tab.

Core Settings Logging Connection	on Notification					
Logging Options						
Logging Enabled						
Log level	Normal 👻					
Compress logs						
Remove old logs						
When age exceeds (days)	10					

Set the logging level to the desired setting. Leaving the logging as default 'normal' is recommended unless instructed to increase the logging level by Support.

Core Settings Logging	Connection No	otification							
Connection from Stats Server to Archive Server									
Host Name. It's important	The Stats Server will need to know how to connect to the Archive Server. It is highly recommended that you use a DNS host name for the Host Name. It's important to note that you are specifying the URL from the point of view of the <b>Stats Server contacting the Archive Server</b> , which may or may not match the URL you'd use from your browser to reach the Stats Server or Archive Server.								
Server Protoco	http 👻								
Archive Server Host Name	192.168.1.114								
Archive Server Port	80								
Archive Server Path	/ArchiveServer								
Stats Server Password	•••••	(Password is set)							
Note: Changing any of the	se parameters will re	quire recopying the stats server bootstrap file!							
Connection from Archiv									
The Archive Server will need to know how to connect to the Stats Server. It is highly recommended that you use a DNS host name for the Host Name. It's important to note that you are specifying the URL from the point of view of the <b>Archive Server contacting the Stats Server</b> , which may or may not match the URL you'd use from your browser to reach the Stats Server or Archive Server.									
Server Protocol	http 👻								
Archive Server Host Name	192.168.1.114								
Archive Server Port	Archive Server Port 80								
Archive Server Path /ArchiveStatsServer									

The Connection between the stats server and the <servername> should not be changed unless the Retain Server requires a modified connection path, (such as a custom port.)

The Statistics server is different from the Retain Worker in that the Retain Server is able to contact the statistics server as well. The connection address to the statistics server should not be modified unless custom connection settings have been created.

Core Settings Logging	Connection	Notification						
Notification								
You can have the Stat Se	erver e-mail a summa	ry of operatio	ons and/or erro	rs that occu	ur while the	e Stat Server ru	uns.	
SMTP Mail Server	192.168.1.121							
SMTP Mail From Address	archive@gwava.con	ı						
SMTP To Address	admin@gwava.com							
SMTP Username	sam							
SMTP Password	•••••	(Passw	ord is default)					
Test Connection								

Notification defaults to the standard notification address specified in the Retain Server activation and initial configuration. If the notification is desired to be different, modify the settings here. Make sure to test the connection to ensure proper function.

Core Settings Logging	Connection Notification	Bootstrap
Boot Strap		
		configuration file copied to its working directory before it can function correctly. You ie file. (http:// <archivestatsserveripaddress>:48080/ArchiveStatsServer)</archivestatsserveripaddress>
Download File		

Like the Retain Worker, the Statistics server must be uploaded a saved configuration or 'bootstrap' file. To access this tab, the configuration must be saved first. Then the bootstrap tab will become available. Download the file to a known location and then browse to the Statistics server webpage. The default connection address is shown on the connection tab.

Ie. http://<ip address of server/RetainStatsServer

The Stats Server needs to be configured in the Archive Server web interface. Once it has been (	configured a "bootstrap" file needs to be downloaded and applied here.
Without a bootstrap file the Stats Server will not know how to find the Archive server. After app Server will be polled by the Stats Server. You will not have to reconfigure the Stats Server many Archive Server.	
1) Select the stats configuration file on your local machine	
+ Browse	
2) Click continue Continue	
More Information	
To download the bootstrap file and upload it do the following:	
Open the Archive server's web interface.	
<ul> <li>Select the Stubbing Server</li> <li>Navigate to the Bootstrap tab.</li> </ul>	
Select 'Download File'.	
<ul> <li>Save the file to your desktop.</li> <li>Return to this interface.</li> </ul>	
Click 'Browse' and locate the file on your desktop.	
Click 'Upload File' below.	

From the Stats Server initial webpage, click on the "Browse" button and browse to the saved bootstrap file and select it.

2) Click continue

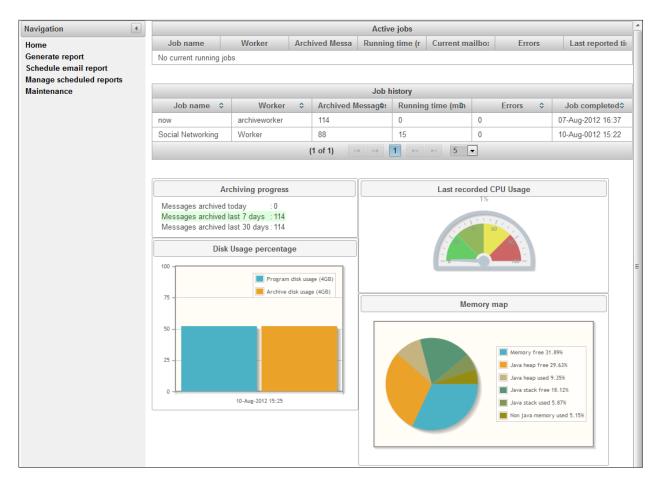
Click 'Continue' to upload the bootstrap file. As the bootstrap file is uploaded, the Stats Server will require an authenticated login. Only users with the administrative "manage workers" rights will be able to login to the stat server.

Login Password	
Password	
	Login

Copyright © 2012 GWAVA Inc. All rights reserved.

#### Home

On login, the Stats Server opens to the Home page. Navigation links to the different pages are listed in the left hand pane, and the navigation window can be collapsed or expanded for screen space. The Home page displays the most pertinent statistics information: messages archived in last seven and 30 days, Job history, active job list, CPU usage, Disk Usage, and a memory map for the <<server name>>.



#### **Generate report**

On the Generate report page, different reports can be generated in one or several jobs. Jobs can be sorted according to the job name, start time, or end time, and reports can be selected from a sorted list or from a drop-down alphabetical list.

Navigation  Home Generate report Schedule email report Manage scheduled reports	Generate report Report to Create Report Output Format Select the job to report on	Job summary   PDF		
Maintenance	Job name Select a value	▼ Start time	\$ End Time	\$
	now	07-Aug-2012 16:37	07-Aug-2012 16:37	
	Social Networking	10-Aug-0012 15:07	10-Aug-0012 15:22	
	Deliverent in Press			
	Deliver report in Browser	•		
	Generate			
			Audit user activity Export audit table	

To generate a report, select a report type from the 'Report to Create' dropdown menu. The default report type is 'Job summary'.

Also select the Report Output Format desired. The default output type is set to PDF, but HTML, XLS, and CSV format files are also available.

Each report must have a subject. Specify the desired report subject by selecting the appropriate item from the criteria menu. The one displayed is the job summary report, and displays the different jobs that have been run.

Select one of the items, in this example, a job, and then select where the report will be delivered – immediately in the browser or delivered in Email.

Different reports have different criteria as appropriate. Select or specify the desired criteria for the desired report and then click on the "Generate" button to create the Generate report.

PDF	
HTML	
XLS	
CSV	

Job run averages

Archive summary by user Server utilization User timestamps Job mailbox summary

Job summar

Browser	
Email	

#### Schedule email reports

Reports can also be scheduled for automatic generation. Automatic reports are always delivered through email, and are created on the 'Schedule email report' page. The same jobs and criteria as found on the 'Generate report' page are found here, but the Schedule report page also includes a schedule for the recurring or single run report, and the dates effective for the report. When the report is configured as desired, click the 'Schedule' button to save the job to the job queue.

Navigation	Generate report	
Home	-	
Generate report	Report to Create	Job summary 🔹
Schedule email report	Report Output Format	PDF 🔹
Manage scheduled reports	Select the job to report on	
Maintenance	Job name Select a value	Start time
	now	07-Aug-2012 16:37 07-Aug-2012 16:37
	Social Networking	10-Aug-0012 15:07 10-Aug-0012 15:22
	Email details	
	Mail server hostname/IP	192.168.1.121
	Sender email address	archive@gwava.com
	Recipient email address(es)	admin@gwava.com
	Email subject	Archive Report
	SMTP username (optional)	sam
	SMTP password (optional)	••••
	Report Schedule	
	Send Report	Daily 🗸
	At Time (24hr format)	00 • : 00 •
	Schedule Start Date	0
	Schedule End Date	0
	Schedule	

#### Manage scheduled reports

To view the scheduled job queue or to delete or modify existing reports, select the 'manage scheduled reports' page. The 'Manage scheduled reports' page is the only page which allows the removal or modification of any currently created or active report jobs. To remove a job select the job (s) from the display and select the 'Remove selected' button. To open a job for editing, select the 'View/change details' button. To initiate a job immediately, select the 'Run report now' button.

Navigation •	Currently Sche	eduled Jobs				
Generate report Schedule email report Manage scheduled reports Maintenance	Report name No records found.	Output format	Schedule type	Next fire time	Sender email address	Email subject
		View/Change	details Run re	eport now	× Remove selected	

#### Maintenance

The Stats Server maintains a separate record of the address book and the job cache. The system automatically syncs this information with the Retain Server every 24 hours. Still, the different records may become out of sync. If a sync becomes required, the different records may be individually triggered to refresh immediately.

Navigation	Maintenance
Home Generate report Schedule email report Manage scheduled reports	Maintenance job(s) will be performed at 2:00 (24hr clock). Currently configured to keep 14 days of statistical data. To configure these settings or other stats settings please do so via the <u>Archive Server</u> .
Maintenance	Remove old statistical data now     older than     14     days.       Synchronize address book cache now       Synchronize iobs cache now

By default, the statistics server only maintains a record of statistics for 14 days, and all data older than 14 days will be automatically expired and the data deleted. If the statistic data is required for longer or shorter, configure and save the setting.

It is not recommended to maintain statistics older than 30 days.

# Licensing

The Retain license is a file with a PEM extension which should be uploaded through this screen. To acquire a license, contact your <u>GWAVA sales representative</u>.

Overview	🤳 Licensing
Documentation	
Search Messages	
Audit Log	Licensing
System Log	
Statistics/Reporting	
	Licensed to CN=pg-1384, EMAILADDRESS=info@gwava.com, O=GWAVA, L=Montreal, ST=QC, C=CA
Data Collection	License ID 108f3478-d038-4f15-92a8-ae7e9f6c617c
Schedules	License State Valid License file installed
Profiles	License Type base exchange gw socialnetworking
Workers	Install Date Fri Jul 27 20:50:36 MDT 2012
Jobs	License expires Thu May 30 21:59:59 MDT 2013
	Support expires Thu May 30 23:59:59 MDT 2013
Management	Your license file is currently stored at: /var/opt/netboxblue/archive/license/rtn334351597124430935.pem
Users	Make sure you keep a backup of this file.
Groups	
Deletion Management	
200000	
Configuration	- Submit License
Server Configuration	oduline Excise
Module Configuration	Browse
Storage Manager	
Statistics Server Configuration	Submit License
Licensing	

Without a license, Retain will function for 30 days for evaluation purposes.

After this period elapses, the following occurs.

- Users without the "Manage Servers" right are not allowed to log in at all.
- > Users with the "Manage Servers" right are allowed access, but only to the Licensing Page.
- All jobs continue to be processed normally

To submit your license, browse to your PEM file and click "Submit License".

Logout and re-login to the server to see the license in effect.

# **Overview**

# Audit Log

All operations involving the archives are logged. This is for auditing purposes so you may know who did what when.

104

Criteria User V Start: 2007 V Created V	is and User V is Jun V 05 V II End: 2007 V Jun V 11 V II Archived V Viewed V Forwarded V Deleted V				Sort By: Date
Search Date	linfo	User	Mailbox	IP Address	Action
18-Jun-2007 03:08	Agent Accounting Data File	linuxworker1	taylor	192.168.100.71	Archived
18-Jun-2007 03:08	Agent Accounting Data File	linuxworker1	taylor	192.168.100.71	Archived
18-Jun-2007 02:03	Retain Error	linuxworker1	willem	192.168.100.71	Archived
38-Jun-2007 02:03	Retain Error	linuxworker1	willem	192.168.100.71	Archived
18-Jun-2007 02:03	Retain Error	linuxworker1	willem	192.168.100.71	Archived
08-Jun-2007 02:03	Retain Error	linuxworker1	willem	192.168.100.71	Archived
08-Jun-2007 02:03	Retain Status Information	linuxworker1	willem	192.168.100.71	Archived
07-Jun-2007 14:09	Retain Test Message Wed Apr 25 17:06:53 EDT 2007.txt	admin	Willem	192.168.100.126	Viewed
07-Jun-2007 14:05	Retain Test Message Wed Apr 25 17:06:53 EDT 2007.txt	admin	Willem	192.168.100.125	Viewed
06-Jun-2007 02:48	Retain Test Message Tue Jun 05 09:30:33 EDT 2007	linuxworker1	willem	192.168.100.71	Archived
06-Jun-2007 02:48	Retain Status Information	linuxworker1	willem	192.168.100.71	Archived
06-Jun-2007 02:45	Agent Accounting Data File	linuxworker1	taylor	192.168.100.71	Archived
15-Jun-2007 11:44	Retain Test Message Wed Apr 25 17:06:53 EDT 2007.txt	guest	taylor	192.168.100.125	Viewed
05-Jun-2007 11:36	Retain Test Message Wed Apr 25 17:06:53 EDT 2007.txt	guest	taylor	192.168.100.125	Viewed
15-Jun-2007 02:49	Retain Status Information	linuxworker1	willem	192.168.100.71	Archived
		linuxworker1	taylor	192,168,100,71	Archived

- > Accessing the audit log requires the "Access Audit Log" administrative right.
- Ordinary users cannot access their audit logs, unless you grant the "Access Personal Audit Log" right, in which case they can find the audit log on a per-message basis under the Properties tab.

To view the system audit trail,

- 1) Enter your search criteria (what part of the log do you want to see?)
- 2) Set a date range
- 3) Click Search.

The results appear below. This may be printed.

If you have rights, you may click on the Action link to open the message.

An auditor does not automatically get the rights to READ messages in mailboxes that are not assigned to them.

# System Log

This option lets you read and parse through the latest system log file. The level of detail is controlled in system configuration.

The actual filename and path on the server is also listed. You may clear the view buffer at any time in case you want to monitor a particular operation for troubleshooting purposes.

	Welcome, admin   Status & Updates   Lo
gs	20
Clear Buffer	<u>~</u>
Logfile: /srv/www/tomcat5/base/logs/RetainServer.2007-06-11.log	4
Record:serverdns,192.168.100.71	
Record:serverport,80	
Record:serverprotocol,http	
Record:serverurl,/RetainServer	
Record:statusinterval,500	
Record:totalmailbox,79	
Record:totalmessage,3522	
ecord:workersecret,TZOHCZZBPKDRXW	
vriting to logger	
RetainServer] sending jobs for worker: D34CC95F03203176D86476B01296433A	
his job may not run!	
senJobs.rs: 0	
have scheduletype: time	
schedule:	
have days = 0 have when = 2:00	
nave when = 2:00 schedule:	
acheddie: have days = 1	
have uays = 1	
schedule:	
have days = 2	~
nave udys = 2	900

# **Searching the Retain Archives**

Now that there is data in your Retain archives, you will want to retrieve this information. This is the core of the information retrieval system in Retain. You search for what you want, the results appear and you can view, print, export, or forward the results. If the logged on user has at least one administrative right assigned, the user is brought to the administrative menus upon login, and must click on "Search Messages" to access the search interface.

There are four tabs in the Search Interface:

- > Browse- for casual browsing and filtering. You may only browse one mailbox at a time.
- Search- for in-depth search, possibly across many mailboxes.
- Exported Items- List of all export
- Options- for changing user settings. Similar to settings in the User Admin.

The browse screen shows you one mailbox at a time. The mailbox you're viewing is listed at the top left and the folder structure is replicated as it is in the mail system. The view the screen displays is dependent on the source mail system for the selected or displayed mailbox. Accordingly, the icons and folder structure of different mailboxes will appear differently for a GroupWise account than it does for an Exchange account.

If you have the rights to access more than one mailbox in the mail system, (such as GroupWise proxy rights and the proxy option enabled in Retain), you will see the "New Mailbox" icon along the toolbar allowing you to switch between mailboxes you have access to. In addition, you may switch display languages using the drop-down language selector along the top.

Browse Search	Exported Items	Optic	ions					
Colin Bretagne			Forward Por Export	🕮 Print 📋 New Mailbox	, p	Custom	< Previous	Next >
🗄 👝 Inbox			ype From		Subject		Recipients	Date
	[		🗟   Colin Bretagne		Test xls		Colin Bretagne	27-Jan-2011 14:57
🛨 🛅 Calendar	[	2	🗟 🖉 Colin Bretagne		test doc		Colin Bretagne	27-Jan-2011 14:37
🛨 📴 Junk Mail 🛨 🏹 Tasks		2	Colin Bretagne		Re: hi		Colin Bretagne	20-Jan-2011 16:19
	E		Bill Conlee		[ngw] De-activating mobility use	rs	NGWList	20-Jan-2011 16:19
+ Public Folders		2	The LogMeIn Team		Your LogMeIn Pro <sup>2</sup> trial is expiri	ing — up	Colin Bretagne	20-Jan-2011 11:13
🛨 🚤 Notes 🛨 🛅 Cabinet		- 2	mailman-owner@ngwlist.com		ngwlist.com mailing list members	ships rem	Colin Bretagne	18-Jan-2011 15:45
🗄 🛅 Sync Issues	[	3 2	LogMeIn.com Auto-Mailer		LogMeIn Account Notification - C	omputer	Colin Bretagne	22-Dec-2010 13:42
🛨 🍞 Deleted Items	[	3 2	LogMeIn.com Auto-Mailer		Add this computer to LogMeIn		Colin Bretagne	22-Dec-2010 13:41
selected Clear selected	[	2	LogMeIn.com Auto-Mailer		LogMeIn - Please activate your a	ccount	Colin Bretagne	22-Dec-2010 13:41

#### An Exchange mailbox:

#### GroupWise mailbox:

Brice Bitter Home	6	Fo	rward 👔 Export 씱 Restor	e 🕒 Print 🔋 New Mailbox 🖉 Custom	Prev 12	vious Next >
Mailbox     Mailbox     A Sent Items		Гуре	From	Subject	Recipients	Date
0 selected Clear selected		0	Rick Liljenquist	Excel Document	David Morgan +	17-Aug-2010 17:28
		<b></b>	Rick Liljenquist	Word Document	David Morgan +	17-Aug-2010 17:28
		0	Art Purcell	Big Message Body Stubbing Test - NT 801	Art Purcell +	21-Apr-2009 17:56
		2	Tony Caras	Gamespot coupon!	Everyone	25-Aug-2008 16:23
		<b></b>	Suzie Wathen	cool lightning	Everyone	25-Aug-2008 16:21

☐ <sup>^</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>®</sup> ?	9	F F	orward 📸 Export 🦕 Restore 📋	Print 🔋 Change Mailbox	Last 30 days 💌	< Previous
Twitter      Tweets		Туре	From	Subject	Recipients	Date
Facebook		f	Reply to an unavailable item:			11-Aug-2012 11:42
If Wall			Bob Jackson	Wales is in the house!!!	Bob Jackson	12-Aug-2012 00:35
Messages			Wales is in the house!!!			
🔢 Status		f	Reply to an unavailable item:			11-Aug-2012 11:42
0 selected Clear selected			Bob Jackson	Graduated from Mater Derp Herp High Scho	Bob Jackson	14-Aug-2012 09:57
			Graduated from Mater Derp Herp High Sc	hool		
		f	Reply to an unavailable item:			07-Aug-2012 16:37
			John Smith	If I had friends, they'd show up here.	John Smith	10-Aug-2012 09:10
			If I had friends, they'd show up here.			

#### Social Messaging:

#### **Cumulative Selections**

In browse and search as you click on selections, these are preserved cumulatively from page to page or across searches, folders, etc. So you can forward, restore stub, PDF export from many places at once.

#### **Quick View**

The search messages interface allows to quickly view items.

🖃 🕋 Colin Bretagne	🔒 🖼 Forward 院 Export 🌄 Restore 🕒 Print 🔋 New Mailbox	D Custon
🛨 👝 Inbox	Type From Subject	
🛨 📤 Sent Items		
🕂 🔂 Drafts	Colin Bretagr Quick View	
🛨 🥅 Calendar	Colin Bretagr	free
🛨 📴 Junk Mail		
🛨 🏹 Tasks	Colin Bretage     experience the incredible features of LogMeIn ProA2, you know how it can gree     increase your productivity. You should also know something else. Your free tria	
+	Bill Conlee expires in just 48 hours. If you want to continue enjoying premium features like	
	The LogMeIn ProA2 online. Purchase today and get 15% off LogMeIn ProA2. Sincerely, The	se cpiring — up
+ 📒 Notes	mailman-own         LogMeIn Team Still have questions? Your LogMeIn Sales rep can help. Simply o           Kate Williams at kwilliams@logmein.com p. 781-897-5000 Toll Free: 866-330-1521	
+ Cabinet		
+ 🧰 Sync Issues	LogMeIn.com     10801 "LogMeIn," and other names, associated designs, logos, icons and marks	n - Computer
+ 🚰 Deleted Items	LogMeIn.com     identifying LogMeIn's products and services are trademarks or service marks of     LogMeIn, Inc. and may not be copied, imitated or used, in whole or in part, wit	hout in
0 selected Clear selected	LogMeIn.com the prior written permission of LogMeIn. All other trademarks, registered tradem product names, company names or logos mentioned herein are the property of	their ur account
	mailman-own respective owners and should not be used without that party's prior written permission.	berships rem
	Colin Bretagr	
	🔲 🖂 Tim Jackson	nin can be wi
	🔲 🚖 Randy Grein	th GroupWise
	🔲 🚖 Colin Bretagne Re: hi	

Accessing the quick view is simple. Simply select the item icon in the 'Type' column, (mail envelope icon), to spawn the quick-view for that item. The quick view displays up to the first 2kb of text for that item in a small window.

#### NOTE: Date Range Filter



Please pay particular attention to the date range filter. Only messages that match the date range filter are displayed. If you don't see the results you expect, check the date range filter to be sure that the settings are correct. See Specifying a Date Range.

#### **Using Online Help**

Retain has context-sensitive help screens that appear in the left column when you click the help icon.



### Browse

Browse Search Exported	Items Options		
🖃 😭 Colin Bretagne	🔒 🖼 Forward 鹛 Export b Restore 🕒 Print 🏮 New I	Mailbox Oustom	Previous Next >
	Type From	Subject	Recipients Date
Sent Items     Drafts	🗐 🚖 🖉 Colin Bretagne	Test xls	Colin Bretagne 27-Jan-2011 14:57
🛨 🔜 Calendar	🗐 🚖 🖉 Colin Bretagne	test doc	Colin Bretagne 27-Jan-2011 14:37
🛨 📴 Junk Mail 🛨 🏹 Tasks	🔲 🊖 Colin Bretagne	Re: hi	Colin Bretagne 20-Jan-2011 16:19
	Bill Conlee	[ngw] De-activating mobility users	NGWList 20-Jan-2011 16:19
Public Folders	🔲 🊖 The LogMeIn Team	Your LogMeIn Pro <sup>2</sup> trial is expiring — up	Colin Bretagne 20-Jan-2011 11:13
🛨 🛀 Notes 🛨 🛅 Cabinet	🔲 🊖 mailman-owner@ngwlist.com	ngwlist.com mailing list memberships rem	Colin Bretagne 18-Jan-2011 15:45
Cabinet     Sync Issues	🔲 🚖 LogMeIn.com Auto-Mailer	LogMeIn Account Notification - Computer	Colin Bretagne 22-Dec-2010 13:42
🛨 🍞 Deleted Items	🔲 🊖 LogMeIn.com Auto-Mailer	Add this computer to LogMeIn	Colin Bretagne 22-Dec-2010 13:41
selected Clear selected	🔲 🊖 LogMeIn.com Auto-Mailer	LogMeIn - Please activate your account	Colin Bretagne 22-Dec-2010 13:41

108

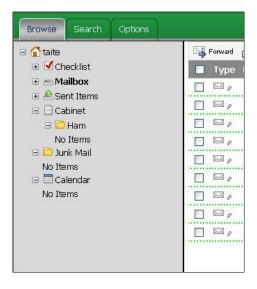
This is the default **Browse** screen.

The logged-in user's mailbox will be displayed by default along the top of the window. You may choose to browse through another mailbox if you wish (and if you have rights to do so).

If the user's mailbox is empty, or the user has no specifically assigned mailbox, then the user will be prompted to select a mailbox to browse. Only mailboxes which the user has rights to, will be available.

Notice that the folder structure of the mailbox is reproduced at left. You can expand the folder list until there are no more sub folders. When there are no more subfolders, you will see "No Items" marked.

You browse the folders in the current mailbox and when selected, their contents are displayed.



#### **Language Selection**

You may select what language the browse screen will use by selecting the drop-down language selector control and choosing your desired language. This selection applies to the search screen as well as the administration interface.

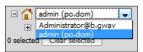
Language	English	~	Admin	Help	Logout
	German				
	English				
	Spanish				
	French				

#### **Merged Mailboxes**

If a mailbox has been merged with its migrated counterpart or any other specified mailbox in Exchange, then the user will have the option to switch mailboxes with a drop-down selection box.

Browse Search Exported Items	Options
🖃 😭 admin (po.dom)	🔒 🖙 Forward 🎆 Export  Restore 🕒 Print 🚦 New Mailbox 🔊 🖉 🛛 Last 30 days 🐷 🔞 🖉 Previous 🛛 Next >
Mailbox     Selected     Clear selected	Type From Subject Recipients Date
	No items found between 05-Jul-2011 02:32 and 04-Aug-2011 02:32.

Mail from both systems will be viewable and manageable in the same window without having to logout or switch mailboxes.



### **Browsing Tools (Widgets)**



Retain will display various options for the user. The specific options displayed depend upon the user's rights, if a user has not been granted the rights to a particular tool, that tool will not be present in their Search Messages interface. The rights are found in the Retain Server Management section, on the <u>Users</u> page. The full range of options includes:

- LITIGATION HOLD: Applies or removes the litigation hold, banning removal from archive. Litigation hold prohibits the deletion manager and jobs from removing applied and marked messages.
- FORWARD: forward selected items by e-mail.
- PDF EXPORT: opens the PDF export window to create a PDF of the selected items to be emailed to a specified mailbox
- RESTORE: Restores messages to the Mail system. See section for details.

prints a list of selected items.

- ➢ PRINT:
- > NEW MAILBOX: select a new mailbox to view.
- > QUICK SEARCH: search the current folder for text in "from", "to", "subject" or body.
- > DATE SELECTOR: select a custom date range. Retain will show items
- within this range. The date filter selection is saved automatically whenever it is changed in the browse and search windows and persists between logged-in sessions. Users should take care that the date range sufficiently covers the time range of interest – a common mistake is to assume Retain has not archived anything, when in fact the date range is simply too narrow.
- PREVIOUS/NEXT: move to the next or previous page of items.

#### **Browse Window Defaults**

- Retain remembers what the last browsed mailbox was.
- Non administrators go right to their mailbox when they log in.
- Administrators get a prompt to select the mailbox they want to view.

#### **New Mailbox**

If you click "Change Mailbox" (which is available if you have access to at least one other mailbox in the system), you will see the mailbox selector screen pop up. Select which mailbox you want to see by

clicking on its radio button and clicking OK. This is just like the <u>mailbox selector</u> <u>used in the user rights administration</u> section.

(If Retain for Social Messaging is set to anonymous user, all Social Messaging data will be contained under the single

Select Mailbo	x						×
Criteria First Name System Socia	al Networking hange		Show only recently	cached item		Ok Cancel	
Current <u>Soc</u> ?@? ?@? (c9		9 1-43d7-a556-fed5d8cbc3	if2)				
							1
First	Last	Mail Server	<u>Mailbox</u>	Dept.	<u>Type</u>	<u>Domain</u>	
?@?	?@?	SocialNetwork	?@?		U	SocialNetwork	

user '?@?', and separate user names and pertinent information is contained in the 'from' dialog.

Otherwise, individual user accounts will be displayed.)

When selecting a single mailbox, the source of the mailbox must be selected as mailboxes from different systems may have the same user name or criteria. Select which mail system the desired user belongs to, specify any further criteria, or leave the criteria blank to display all possible mailboxes from that system.

	eria							
First	Name	<ul> <li>begins with</li> </ul>	th	-	Search		Ok	Cancel
Syste	em Exchange	<ul> <li>Show or</li> </ul>	nly users 🔽	Show only recentl	y cached items 📃			
Curr	ently Select	ted						
		836aba9-c8d2-4	ae2-b61c-bb	08203e7b8e0)				
				,				
	d96	d96	BESX	d96		U	blackberry.gwava.com	
-	d97	d90	BESX	d90		U	blackberry.gwava.com	
-	d98	d98	BESX	d98		U	blackberry.gwava.com	
-	d99	d99	BESX	d99		U	blackberry.gwava.com	
~	Rick	Liljenguist	BESX	rickl	development	U	blackberry.gwava.com	
5	MikeFirst	MikeLast	BESX	MikeAlias	mikedepartment	U	blackberry.gwava.com	
5	Art	Purcell	BESX	art		U	blackberry.gwava.com	
5	u1	u1	BESX	u1		U	blackberry.gwava.com	
No	ext > 🗧 🗲							-

If the search results are extensive, the system will have a 'Next' or 'Previous' button at the bottom of the search results window, which displays the next set of results.

Refine search parameters to reach a manageable search result.

In Retain, you can only browse one mailbox at a time. To search multiple mailboxes simultaneously, use the search function.

After selecting a mailbox, click 'Ok' to load that mailbox into the viewer.

Browse Search Exported Iten	s Options				
maston Home     Mailbox	Forward protection Restore Print 🚦 New Mailbox		Last 30 days 💌	Previous Next >	
0 selected Clear selected	interference of the second	_ maste	'n	03-Mar-2011 21:56	=
	iohn@squirrel.com>	_ maste	n	03-Mar-2011 21:56	
	A <john@squirrel.com></john@squirrel.com>	_ maste	n	03-Mar-2011 21:56	E

# Toolbar Options:

Specifying a Date Range

You can narrow the scope of your browse by entering a date range. This is what it looks like.

- Date Range Start: 2007 💙 Jun 💌 13 🔹	-
End: 2007 💙 Jun 💙 13 💙	
	<u>&lt;</u> June 2007 <u>&gt;</u>
Ok	Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa 1 2
	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
	this month
	close

### **Litigation Hold**

See the <u>Litigation Hold</u> section later in the document.

#### Forwarding a Message

In the main browser window, you can select a message by checking its checkbox and the click "Forward". You will see this dialog:

Forward Messages	
<ul> <li>Forward Message</li> </ul>	\$\$
Recipients(s)	
Subject	Forwarded message from Retain
Comment (optional)	~
Forward Cancel	)

Enter the recipients (where you want the message(s) to be forwarded), separated by commas. Enter a comment if desired and click "**Forward**". Retain will send the message(s) via SMTP.

#### **PDF Export**

PDF Export is a new function which allows users, (with appropriate rights), to export single or multiple items into a PDF file. This PDF can be named and defined by the user exporting the document. Items will appear as navigable files in the PDF. The default view provides a list on top of the PDF viewer which works as a table of contents to provide access to the exported archive.

If you have rights to do so (new user right), can export browse or search results to PDF. Select the desired items and then select the "Export" button.

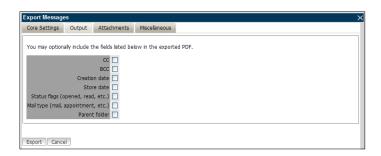
Browse Search Exp	orted Items Options		
🖃 😭 david Home	🕞 Forward 📑 Export 🦙 Restore 🕒 Print 🊦	New Mailbox Custom 💌	Previous Next
E Mailbox     Selected Clear selected	Type From	Subject Recipients	Date
	V 🐱 <demosrv_update@concureworkplace.com< th=""><th>Concur Expense Document&gt;&gt; - Kay "david.delain Chapma</th><th>ey@ibuycrap.org". 07-Oct-2009 22:01</th></demosrv_update@concureworkplace.com<>	Concur Expense Document>> - Kay "david.delain Chapma	ey@ibuycrap.org". 07-Oct-2009 22:01
	V 🐱 <demosrv_update@concureworkplace.com< th=""><th>&gt; <concur document="" expense="">&gt; - David W. "david.delain</concur></th><th>ey@ibuycrap.org". 07-Oct-2009 21:49</th></demosrv_update@concureworkplace.com<>	> <concur document="" expense="">&gt; - David W. "david.delain</concur>	ey@ibuycrap.org". 07-Oct-2009 21:49
	🔽 📼 <1.141662271@multexinvestornetwork	.com Feb 7, 2002 - At what price broadband? chris.po.dom	07-Feb-2002 02:43
	artistinsider@info.artistdirect.com>	MusicNews.Bono.Cobain.Britney.Sade.SnoCo chris.po.dom	07-Feb-2002 01:29
	<1.141662272@multexinvestornetwork	.com February 7, 2002 - Enterprising investor chris.po.dom	06-Feb-2002 23:20

Fill out the various options as desired.

The different options include the file information.

Export Messages							
Core Settings Output Attachments	Miscellaneous						
Basic PDF export settings are set here.							
Send email when export is complete to	six items						
Document Title	six						
Document Subtitle	there should be six items, three on one page						
Comment to include	included comment						
Download Filename	Export Set 14-Oct-2009 14:10:20						
Password protect PDF (leave blank for none)							
l							
Export Cancel							

The File output and included fields can be edited.



Any attachments to the email sent to the defined recipient.

kport Messages		
Core Settings Output Attachme	nts Miscelaneous	
You may restrict which attachments are naximum attachment size in MB.	included and excluded by extension. By default all attachments are included. Yo	ou may also set the
-Include attachments with extens	n	
Add		
	Edit	
	Remove	
Exclude attachments with extens		
Add		
	Edit	
	Remove	
Aaximum size of attachments, in MB (m	st be less than 2048) 2048	
Export potentially da	ngerous attachments?	
xport Cancel		
apore carreer		

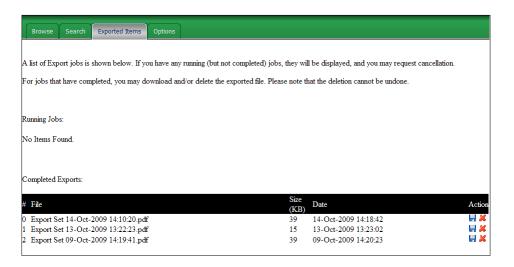
...And finally, any restrictions to size or time zone for the PDF. If the archive size does not exceed the maximum size, then the archive will be contained in one file. If larger, the archive will be exported into multiple PDFs will be created according to the maximum limit, until the archive export is complete. Time zone information will be used for formatting any time and date information in email headers. The time written to the cover sheet and date column in the PDF table of contents is written according to the time zone of the Retain Server.

Export Messages	×
Core Settings Output Attachments Miscellaneous	
You may set the page size, or the total PDF size.	
Page Size to use Letter Portrait	
Maximum size of PDF in MB (must be less than 2048) 2048	
Time Zone US/Mountain	
Export Cancel	

When finished, select 'Export'. Depending on the size of the PDF export list, the export may take some time. The Export will notify via email when it is complete, if a notification address was provided.

Currently running export jobs are also listed under the 'Exported Items' tab.

Once the Export has completed, the finished PDF is available under the 'Exported Items' tab. Locate the appropriate export list and select the disk icon to download the finished PDF.



Copyright © 2012 GWAVA Inc. All rights reserved.

The finished PDF is structured with an email or item list on top as a working table of contents, and the selected item is displayed below. The title, subtitle, and comments are listed on the title page, as shown.

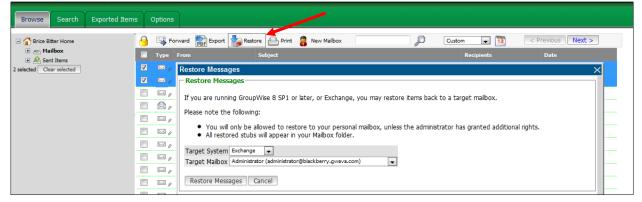
<u>î</u>		indow Help						×
		<b>þ</b>					Search	10
								100 Items
-	Date	Subject	From	То	Size	_	_	
1	9/18/2001 4:20:52 PM	New Contact Info.	delainey.GWIA.dom	"bgabrielson@cdnam.com".GWIA.dom	2.658 KB			
1	9/18/2001 4:20:52 PM	New Contact Info.	delainey.GWIA.dom	"bgabrielson@cdnam.com".GWIA.dom	2.658 KB			
1	9/18/2001 4:20:52 PM	New Contact Info.	delainey.GWIA.dom	"bgabrielson@cdnam.com".GWIA.dom	2.659 KB			
1	9/18/2001 4:20:52 PM	New Contact Info.	delainey.GWIA.dom	"bgabrielson@cdnam.com".GWIA.dom	2.659 KB			
<u>h</u>	12/5/2001 7:36:59 AM	FW: New Power	delainey.GWIA.dom	"bgabrielson@cdnam.com".GWIA.dom	2.889 KB			
-								
	Cover sheet					3 30%	- 🗃 📓	
				Title				
				<b>Title</b> Subtitle		_		
				Subtitle admin		_		
			Thu	Subtitle	ST 2009	_		

#### Restore

Retain can restore messages to target mailboxes in the mail system, for those users who have the appropriate rights to restore messages. If a user has the rights to restore messages their user interface will have the 'Restore' button visible on their toolbar. Restoring messages **requires** GroupWise 8, or Exchange.

The action that the restore function performs is dependent on what platform the messages are to be restored to. For GroupWise, when the restore function is called, the selected GroupWise message(s) will have a stub restored to the mail system. Because the stub connects to and references the full item in the Retain archive, this function is effectively a 'full restore' of the message or messages. If message(s) are restored to Exchange, a full copy of the entire message with attachments is restored to the mail system. GroupWise messages may be restored to either Exchange or GroupWise.

To restore a message or messages, log into the Retain archive, locate and select the desired message, or messages, and click on the 'Restore' button.



Select the desired target mail system for the restored messages. (This is usually the source mail system, though GroupWise messages may also be restored to the Exchange system.)

Target System	Exchange 👻	
Target Mailbox	Exchange	ministrator@blackberry.gwava.com)
	Groupwise	

After the 'Restore' option has been selected, and if the user has rights to restore to any mailbox, the target mailbox must be specified, otherwise, only the user's mailbox will be available. When the 'Restore Messages' button is selected, Retain connects to the mail system and places a stub or the entire selected message in the target mailbox.

Restore Messages	×
Restore Messages	
If you are running GroupWise 8 SP1 or later, or Exchange, you may re	astore items back to a target mailbox.
Please note the following:	
You will only be allowed to restore to your personal mailbox, u     All restored stubs will appear in your Mailbox folder. Target System Exchange	nless the administrator has granted additional rights.
Target Mailbox Administrator (administrator@blackberry.gwava.com)	-
Administrator (administrator@blackberry.gwava.com)           Restore Mess         BESAdmin (besadmin@blackberry.gwava.com)           equipholder (equipholder@blackberry.gwava.com)         journalMB (journalmb@blackberry.gwava.com)           journalMB (journalmb@blackberry.gwava.com)         iogintest (logintest@blackberry.gwava.com)           roomholder (roomholder@blackberry.gwava.com)         test (test@blackberry.gwava.com)           test (test@blackberry.gwava.com)         coin Bretagne (colinb@blackberry.gwava.com)	

The Users Right that is required to use the Restore feature is called "Restore Messages". Administrator level right allows users to restore messages to any mailbox, including mailboxes which did not have the message before.

Restoring a message which currently exists in the target mailbox results in a duplicate message existing in that mailbox. It is recommended to only restore messages that have been deleted from the mail system, but exist in the Retain archive.

The Restore Stub feature requires:

- GroupWise 8 Client
- GroupWise 8 Post Office
- Retain Stubbing Server
- Stubbing correctly setup in ConsoleOne.
- Sufficient user rights to restore messages.

### Search

This is the default **Search** screen.

Core Settings User Rights Mailboxes Miscellaneous
User Rights
Rights explicitly granted to the user.
Administrator level rights
Access all audit logs
Deletion Manager
Manage Server
Manage Users and Groups
Manage Workers, Schedules, Profiles, Jobs
Publish Messages
Restore messages [Any Mailbox]
Search all mailboxes
<u>User level rights</u>
View/Save attachments
View personal audit log
Export Messages
Forward Messages
Print Messages
Read Configuration (Redline)
Restore messages [My Mailbox]

Browse Search Exported Items	Options						
le 🖓 🛃 🦀 🖊	🔒 🖼 Forw	ard 💦 Export 🚽	🗃 Restore 🛛 🔒 Print	Last 30 days 💌 12	< Previous Next >		
Core Search terms	🔲 Туре		Subject		From	Date	
Contains (exact)							
Search mailboxes     All Mailboxes							
© Selected Select							
Currently Selected							
Scope Sort Misc.							
Search Reset 0 selected Clear selected							

In Search, you enter your criteria on the left, including the scope of your search. Multiple criteria are permitted and you can perform a precise search this way. Your search results appear in the main window. Users with more rights will have more tools and search options available. Only users with rights to the different options in the archive will have those options appear in their toolbar.

Retain will search across all mailboxes you have rights to. By default, a regular user only has rights to their own mailbox and therefore will only see results from that.

#### See Search in More Detail

## **Opening/Viewing a Message**

Message Properties	
From: Tails <tcmofo@gmail.com> <tcmofo@gmail.com></tcmofo@gmail.com></tcmofo@gmail.com>	14-Feb-2007 12:38
To: julie <clark@redline.gwava.com>, <taylor@taylor.gwava.com>,carl <heinz@redlir <melissa@redline.gwava.com>,Greg <lynn@redline.gwava.com>,taite <charles@< td=""><td>ne.gwava.com&gt;,mitchell redline.gwava.com&gt;</td></charles@<></lynn@redline.gwava.com></melissa@redline.gwava.com></heinz@redlir </taylor@taylor.gwava.com></clark@redline.gwava.com>	ne.gwava.com>,mitchell redline.gwava.com>
Subject: test the group	
Mime.822 (1659 bytes) [Open] [Save]	
Attachments: MESSAGE TEXT (5 bytes) [Open] [Save]	
MESSAGE HTML (6 bytes) [Open] [Save]	
<pre>Return-path: <tcmofo@gmail.com> Received: from nz-out-0506.google.com ([64.233.162.236])</tcmofo@gmail.com></pre>	
<pre>d=gmail.com; s=beta; h=received:message-id:date:from:to:subject:mime-version:content-type; b=Mo/LifFmUzM+awWSdXbyHgvrjgxXIp5tL8kLocExST7X1U9DGWUEreHFtkzg32AwepnMKnRH Received: by 10.64.49.20 with SMTP id w20mr3889195qbw.1171474686320; Wed, 14 Feb 2007 09:38:06 -0800 (PST) Received: by 10.65.44.20 with HTTP; Wed, 14 Feb 2007 09:38:06 -0800 (PST) Message-ID: &lt;&lt;5595e4b0702140938s2d64a0eetb62b8f71506a9163@mail.gmail.com&gt;</pre>	11ALFrGDfXQ0SMWhQmwh/fdrS9e
Date: Wed, 14 Feb 2007 12:38:06 -0500	
From: Tails <tcmofo@gmail.com></tcmofo@gmail.com>	
To: charles@redline.gwava.com, melissa@redline.gwava.com,	

You will see all of the text, the headers and attachments as listed. Here is another example:

Message Properties	
From: taite <charles@redline.gwava.com> To: Tails <tcmofo@gmail.com> Subject: Re: test from outside world (I'm out) Attachments: MESSAGE TEXT (38 bytes) [Open] [Save]</tcmofo@gmail.com></charles@redline.gwava.com>	12-Feb-2007 17:37 🌥
>>> tcmofo 02/12/07 16:43 >>> test	

Notice how the message's metadata has all been saved: time/date, status of attachments and so on.

The user may print the message or save it to disk, if they possess the necessary <u>rights</u>. You can also select the properties tab to see more information about the message:

Message	Properties	
From: ta	aite <charles@redline.gwava.com></charles@redline.gwava.com>	12-Feb-2007 17:37
To: T	Fails <tcmofo@gmail.com></tcmofo@gmail.com>	
Subject: R	Re: test from outside world (I'm out)	
Attachme	ents: MESSAGE TEXT (38 bytes) [Open] [Save]	
Core		<u></u>
core		
Item 1	Type: Mail	
	Type: sent	
	UID: 013BDEC0-0C5E-0000-AD6D-170031001600	
	Node: 839	
	Read: no	
	ated: 12-Feb-2007 17:37	
	rered: 12-Feb-2007 17:37 Fored: 04-Jun-2007 12:27	=
	Path: / taite / Sent Items / Re: test from outside world (I'm out)	
Additi	onal Properties	
	in: gw2dom	
	ty: Standard	
	us: accepted,opened,read ce: gw2po	
postonic	Le: gwzpo	
		>

The message's item type, status, relationship information, opened status, original location and so on are all stored. All of these items are valid based on the time the message was archived from GroupWise.

The properties section is where a lot of fields that are specific to the Mail system are saved.

### Search in More Detail

The search window has some of the same top buttons as the browse window.

|--|

### Search Window

The browse window allows the user to access a single mailbox at a time, access the folder tree of the

mailbox and perform some basic searching and filtering. For more advanced searching options, and the ability to search multiple mailboxes at once use the Search Window.

### Core Tab:

#### Search Terms – What To Look For

You specify up to 5 additional criteria here. All items are logically AND-ed together to narrow the search unless specified with a double pipe. Using the double pipe denotes an 'or' search criteria. (I.e. A search criteria with 'Retain || Vertigo' would result with messages containing the words 'retain' OR 'vertigo' in the specified field.) To use the Internet Header search term, you must

### enable the Internet Header options in the profile.

You can search based on all items shown on the right with operators including:

- Contains (fuzzy)
- Contains (exact)
- Starts with
- Does not contain

You must have at least one search item. You can add and delete

them using the  $\textcircled{\blacksquare}$  buttons to the left.

### Search Mailboxes – Where to Look

Click the radio button to search through all mailboxes (that you have rights to) or click the other radio button to search through selected mailboxes.

You choose which mailbox, or mailboxes to search through using the mailbox selection tool. (See below) Mailboxes that you have selected for the search are listed in the Currently Selected panel.

#### Start Your Search

To initiate a search, click the search button. The results will appear on the right, and will be saved as a persistent query. Every time you execute search, even between login sessions, the same query will be executed. If you click on the Reset button, the current query is cleared.

le 🗸 🔜 🗶				
Core				
Search terms				
Subject     Subject     Sender (email)     Sender (display)     Sender Domain     Attachment Name     Searr Recipient     Recip. Domain     GW Post Office				
GW Domain Internet Header Message Contents Currently Selected				

Search mailboxes All Mailboxes Selected Select Currently Selected joe smith smith willem bagchus taylor ocotrane meliss mitchell dave etburne
Scope
Sort
Misc.
Search Reset

The toolbar on the right provides similar functionality to the browse window toolbar, and allows the user to forward messages from the search results, print, etc. - assuming the user has rights to do so.



## Selecting Mailboxes

When you click on SELECT, you choose which mailboxes to search through using the selection tool. Use the check boxes to select mailboxes and click "Add Selected" to add them to the list in "Currently Selected". You may remove mailboxes from the "Currently Selected" list by clicking on the red X next to them.

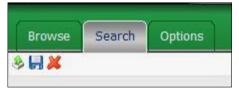
You will see the mailboxes made available to you via GroupWise proxy rights (if the function is enabled in Retain), via the "Search All Mailboxes" right or via mailboxes you have been granted access to specifically.

Select Mailbox	es					
Add Selected	Ok Cancel					
Currently Sele	cted					
Willem Bagchus         Colin James         carl         conchrane         Criteria         First Name V       begins with V         Show only users V       Show only users V						
Address Book						
<u>First</u>	<u>Last</u>	<u>PostOffice</u>	<u>Mailbox</u>	<u>Dept.</u>	<u>Type</u>	
📄 Willem	Bagchus	gw2po	Willem		U	
	Greg	gw2po	Lynn		U	
🔲 Colin	James	gw2po	Colin		U	
	Miss	gw2po	Hanigan		U	
	carl	gw2po	Heinz		U	

Core
Scope
Item Type
(Leave unselected to search all types)
Mail Appointment
Task Phone Message
Note
- Item Source
(Leave unselected to search all sources)
Received Posted
Sent Draft
- Attachment Size
Any
Sort
Misc.
Search Reset

### Loading, Saving and Deleting Searches

The user may save searches for future use, and reload them whenever they are useful. These search queries may also be deleted freely.



The icons (below the tabs) from left to right mean:

- Load
- Save
- > Delete

You can save up to ten queries and you may delete queries you no longer want.

#### 121

#### Scope Tab:

This tab contains functions to further narrow what you're searching through.

### Item Type

If no boxes are checked, you will search through every mail system item type. Otherwise, Retain will search through only those types of items you have checked off.

### **Item Source**

If no boxes are checked, you will search through every item source. Otherwise, Retain will search through only those items whose source matches what you have selected.

### **Attachment Size**

When searching through messages, you can tell Retain to search through all messages regardless of the size of the attachments or whether to restrict your search to only those items whose attachments are within the size range you select.

### Sort Tab:

Choose how you want Retain to sort your search results.

You may sort your results by the date the items were created in the mail system, by the Subject, Sender, Sender's Domain, the Recipient's e-mail address, or display name.

Your sort may be up to three levels deep.

#### Misc. Tab:

Choose your Date Range here. It is important to note WHAT date is being filtered here. It is NOT the same as the date range selector on the results window. The results window date range filters based on the date the item was created in the mail system.

In this case, it is for filtering appointments and tasks. So you are filtering based on the start/end dates of the item, regardless of when it was created in the mail system. For example, you might have created an appointment for yourself that will happen in three months. The creation date is three months away from the start/finish dates.

	Core	
	Scope	
	Sort	
Sort Results		
First By: Creation	ion Date 🛛 💙	
Then By: Send	ler Domain 💌	
Then By: Recip	o. (display) 💙	
	Misc.	
	Search Reset	
	Core	
	Scope	
	Sort	
	Misc.	
Start Date	Appointment, Task)	
(any date)	Range	
End/Complete D		
C	Search Reset	

### Litigation hold

Litigation hold is a feature which counteracts the deletion manager. To use the Litigation hold feature, users MUST have the litigation hold right granted to them in the Retain Server.

The deletion manager is how mail is expired out of the archive, and removed when no longer needed due to age or other circumstance. Litigation hold tells the system to ignore the remove command from the deletion manager; messages or entire user mailboxes with litigation hold applied will not have any mail removed from the system until the hold is removed.

9	Fo	rward 📸 Export 🍃 Restore 🕒 Print 🚦 Ne	w Mailbox Custom	Previous Next
	Туре	From	Subject	Recipients
	$\sim$	<1.141662271@multexinvestornetwork.com	Feb 7, 2002 - At what price broadband?	chris.po.dom
		<1.141662271@multexinvestornetwork.com	Feb 7, 2002 - At what price broadband?	chris.po.dom
	₩	<artistinsider@info.artistdirect.com></artistinsider@info.artistdirect.com>	MusicNews.Bono.Cobain.Britney.Sade.SnoCo	chris.po.dom

To apply the Litigation hold to an item, select the item then select the padlock at the top of the browse window. The following window will be displayed:

Choose whether to apply or remove the hold from the selected items. The entire use mailbox may be excluded from a deletion job in the deletion manager.

<1.141662271@multexinvestornetwork.com	Feb 7, 2002 - At what price broadband?	chris.po.dom	07-Feb-2002 02:43
<artistinsider@info.artistdirect.com></artistinsider@info.artistdirect.com>	MusicNews.Bono.Cobain.Britney.Sade.SnoCo	chris.po.dom	07-Feb-2002 01:29

Items that have a litigation hold active on them are marked by a small padlock in the interface. If a hold needs to be removed, selecting the item then the litigation hold button at the top will bring up the option to remove the hold from the selected items.

### **Shared Queries**

Queries may be shared with other users in the system. Shared queries are still subject to the individual rights of any user that the query is shared with. A shared query shows the full results to the query but does not grant access to the messages. If a user is restricted from viewing the mail from another user, but has a shared query, they will be unable to access the messages outside their rights.

Any search may be saved and any saved query may be shared with other users. When a shared query is created, the creator decides which users to share the query with. Once a query has been saved by using the disk icon at the top of the search window, it can become a shared query.

Creating a shared query takes two main steps. A query must be shared, and then accessed by the user it was shared with. To share an existing query, select the sharing icon at the top of the search window. This icon looks like red and blue users. The icon is between the save, and the close icons.



After selecting the share query icon, a window displaying all saved queries is displayed.

Share Quer		×
Your personal	ries	
Sa defau	I want to share this query	
Cancel		

There are no queries shared in this window. The queries are listed, displaying name and description. If a query is to be shared, select the gray icon at the beginning of the saved query.

Share Query		
Group Membership		After
auditor	Ť	query
	Remove Member	users
	Member (no users) 💉 Add Member	Use t
	•	Mem
		popu
Ok Cancel		popu share

After selecting the shared query icon, the query creator must now select which users to share the query with.

Use the drop-down menu and 'Add Member, Remove Member' buttons to populate the group the query is to be shared with.

Once the group has been selected, click 'Ok' to be returned to the Share Query window. If the share query icon is now colored instead of gray, then the query has been successfully shared, and the users in the shared group now have access to the query.

There is no limit to the amount of users that a query can be shared with. Adding users to an existing shared query group is accomplished by selecting the shared query icon and editing the existing list. The user which created and initially

Share	Query	
Vour p	ersonal queries	
	default	I want to share this query
Cancel		

shared the query retains the rights to remove users from the shared query group membership or cancel the share altogether.

#### Accessing Shared Query

To access a shared query, a user which has membership in a shared query group logs into Retain and selects the Search tab. In the Search window, the user selects the Load icon at the top left of the search window. All saved queries will be

À 🔜 🖧 💢	📑 Forward 🛛 🕒 Print	Last 30 days 💌 🧱 Previous Next	
Core	Туре	Subject	
Contains (exact)			
Sort	Share Query		
Misc.	Queries shared with user		
Search Reset	💥 admin default	I want to share this query	
0 selected Clear selected	Cancel		

displayed, and the query that was shared will be available to be viewed. Select the desired query and the 'Load Selected Query' button to load the search criteria. Clicking 'Search' loads the messages fitting the shared criteria.

124

#### **Removing a Shared Query**

Users have the option to remove a shared query from their saved query list.

If a user desires to remove a shared query from their query list, it is accomplished through the 'Shared Query' window. Select the 'Shared Query' icon to view all queries that are shared, and that the user is sharing.

	- )r		
8 🗏 🕸 其	Forward 🛛 🔒 Print	Last 30 days 💉 🎦 Previous Next	
Core	🔲 Туре	Subject	From
Search terms			
Sort Misc. Search Reset			1
0 selected Clear selected		Load Query Queries shared with user admin 12-Apr-2010 default I want to share this query	×
		Load Selected Query	

Selecting the red 'X' next to the offending query in the shared query window will remove the query and remove the user from the shared query group.



This action cannot be reversed, but the query may be re-shared.

### **Search Window**

#### **Options Tab**

The options section here is exactly like the section in the <u>Administration | Users section</u>. These settings here are specific to the currently logged in user. The current loaded user is shown next to "User ID" located below the Core Settings tab.

Browse Search Exported Items Options
a Options
Core Settings User Rights Mailboxes Miscellaneous
User ID admin
Core Settings
Comment
Authentication Method Offline Authentication (forced) (Use exclusively)
Primary UID (links your rights) df8616e9-c942-42a8-919e-6a4fb7e2ccc0 (none)
Group Membership (none)
Account can expire
Old
Change Internal Password New
Confirm

#### **Core Settings**

Among the information displayed is:

- > Your User ID (internally generated by Retain)
- > Your Group Membership (you cannot change that here)
- > Your authentication method (you may change this if you have rights to)
- > Your offline password if you don't use SOAP to authenticate
  - You may change the password only if you have rights to

### **User Rights Tab**

You're shown the rights you have within Retain on this screen. Available rights may only be changed by a user administrator within the Administration screen.

Brows	se Search	Exported Item	s Options	5	
🖁 Op	tions				
	Core Settings	User Rights	Mailboxes	Miscellaneous	
	User ID admin				
L I	Jser Rights				
R	lights explicitly g	ranted to you, a	nd inherited f	rom your Group r	nembership.
N	′ou have full righ	ts to search all n	nailboxes, and	perform all opera	itions.

### **Mailboxes Tab**

In this section, you're shown the mailboxes you have been given explicit rights to work in. By default, you have rights to only your own mailbox. If an administrator explicitly gives you rights to other mailboxes or you are a member of a group that has rights to other mailboxes explicitly, those mailboxes will be shown here.

				_	
Brow	vse Search	Exported Item	s Options		
🏮 Op	otions				
	Core Settings	User Rights	Mailboxes	Miscellaneous	
	User ID admin				
	Mailboxes				
	These are additio You have full righ				

#### **Miscellaneous Tab**

This contains your display and session options.

These work just as described in the <u>user display</u> options in the Administration screen.

#### Options are:

۶	Comment	Default comment for
		forwarding messages.
$\triangleright$	Date/Time Format	How you want your
		dates and times to be displayed.
$\triangleright$	Display Number	How many items to
		display per page.
$\succ$	Message Age Display	Default date filter for
		searching. It may be changed on
		the fly.
$\succ$	Session Timeout	Inactive session timeout. Can be
	between 5 and 60 minu	ites.

Search       Exported Rems       Options         ions       Core Settings       User Rights       Malboxes       Miscelaneous         ser ID administry       Iscellaneous       Iscellaneous       Iscellaneous         Comment       The default comment appended to forwarded messages can be set here.         Comment       Iscellaneous       Iscellaneous         Date       Date/Time Formats       Iscellaneous         Date       Day-ShortKonth-Year       Iscellaneous         Date       Day-ShortKonth-Year       Iscellaneous         Desplay Number       Iscellaneous       Iscellaneous         How many items to display per page       Iscellaneous       Iscellaneous         Display Number       Iscellaneous       Iscellaneous       Iscellaneous         How many days of messages should be displayed by default?       Message Age Display       Ist 30 daya       Iscellaneous         Session Timeout       Session Timeout       Session Timeout       Iscellaneous       Iscellaneous
Core Settings User Rights Maiboxes Miscelaneous are ID admin iscellaneous Comment The default comment appended to forwarded messages can be set here. Comment Comment Date/Time Formats Date/Time Formats Defines how dates and times are displayed. Date Day-ShortKonth-Year  Time 24 Hour  Example: 16-Mar-2011 00:38 Display Number How many tems to display per page Display Number 25 Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display List 30 days
eer ID admin iscellaneous Comment The default comment appended to forwarded messages can be set here. Comment Comment Date/Time Formats Date/Time Formats Defines how dates and times are displayed. Date Day-ShortKonth-Year  Time 24 Hour  Example: 16-Mar-2011 00:38 Display Number How many items to display per page Display Number How many items to display per page Display Number How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Lent 30 days
eer ID admin iscellaneous Comment The default comment appended to forwarded messages can be set here. Comment Comment Date/Time Formats Date/Time Formats Defines how dates and times are displayed. Date Day-ShortKonth-Year  Time 24 Hour  Example: 16-Mar-2011 00:38 Display Number How many items to display per page Display Number How many items to display per page Display Number How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Lent 30 days
Iscellanceous         Comment         The default comment appended to forwarded messages can be set here.         Comment         Comment         Date/Time Formats         Defines how dates and times are displayed.         Date       Day-ShortMonth-Year         Time       24 Hour         Example:       16-Mar-2011 00:38         Display Number         How many items to display per page         Display Number       25         How many days of messages should be displayed by default?         Message Age Display       Last 30 daya
Comment The default comment appended to forwarded messages can be set here. Comment Comment Comment Comment Comment Date/Time Formats Defines how dates and times are displayed. Date Day-ShortKonth-Year Time 24 Hour 24 Hour Example: 16-Mar-2011 00:38 Display Number How many items to display per page Display Number How many items to display per page Display Number How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Last 30 days
The default comment appended to forwarded messages can be set here.  Comment  Date/Time Formats  Defines how dates and times are displayed.  Date Day-ShortKonth-Year  Time 24 Hour  24 Hour  24 Hour  25  Display Number  How many tems to display per page  Display Number  25  Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default?  Message Age Display Lent 30 days
Comment Date/Time Formats Defines how dates and times are displayed. Defines how dates and times are displayed. Defines how dates and times are displayed. Define 24 hour  Time 24 hour  24 hour  25  Display Number How many items to display per page Display Number  25  Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Left 30 days
Date/Time Formats Defines how dates and times are displayed. Date Day-ShortKonth-Year  Time 24 Hour  Example: 16-Har-2011 00:38 Display Number How many terms to display per page Display Number  25  Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Left 30 days
Date/Time Formats Defines how dates and times are displayed. Date Day-ShortKonth-Year  Time 24 Hour  Example: 16-Har-2011 00:38 Display Number How many terms to display per page Display Number  25  Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Left 30 days
Date/Time Formats Defines how dates and times are displayed. Date Day-ShortKonth-Year  Time 24 Hour  Example: 16-Har-2011 00:38 Display Number How many terms to display per page Display Number  25  Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Left 30 days
Defines how dates and times are displayed.       Date     Day-ShortHorth-Year       Time     24 Hour       Example: 16-Har-2011 00:38       Display Number       How many items to display per page       Display Number       25       Message Age Display       How many days of messages should be displayed by default?       Message Age Display       Last 30 days
Defines how dates and times are displayed.       Date     Day-ShortHorth-Year       Time     24 Hour       Example: 16-Har-2011 00:38       Display Number       How many items to display per page       Display Number       25       Message Age Display       How many days of messages should be displayed by default?       Message Age Display       Last 30 days
Defines how dates and times are displayed.       Date     Day-ShortHorth-Year       Time     24 Hour       Example: 16-Har-2011 00:38       Display Number       How many items to display per page       Display Number       25       Message Age Display       How many days of messages should be displayed by default?       Message Age Display       Last 30 days
Date     Day-ShortKonth-Year       Time     24 Hour       Example: 16-Mar-2011 00:38       Display Number       How many items to display per page       Display Number       25       Message Age Display       How many days of messages should be displayed by default?       Message Age Display       Last 30 days
Time       24 Hour         Example:       16-Mar-2011         Display Number       -         How many items to display per page       -         Display Number       25         Message Age Display       -         How many days of messages should be displayed by default?         Message Age Display
Example: 16-Mar-2011 00:38 Display Number How many items to display per page Display Number 25 • Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Last 30 days •
Display Number         How many terms to display per page         Display Number       25 •         Message Age Display         How many days of messages should be displayed by default?         Message Age Display         Last 30 days
How many items to display per page           Display Number         25           Message Age Display         25           How many days of messages should be displayed by default?           Message Age Display         Left 30 days
Display Number 25 • Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Lant 20 days •
Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Last 30 days •
Message Age Display How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Last 30 days •
How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Last 30 days •
How many days of messages should be displayed by default? Message Age Display Last 30 days •
Message Age Display Last 30 days
Session Timeout
Session Timeout
Time in minutes, to expire an inactive login session.

# Using the Retain Help System

Retain has context-sensitive help screens that appear in the left column when you click the help icon. (



Quick Reference	Server Configuration	6 😒 🖯
Configuration	Communications Index/Storage Accounts Maintenance Notification Logging Miscellaneous	~
This page is used to adjust core S configuration parameters. The "Ma		
is required to access this page.	Miscellaneous Default Worker Password	
Many of these configuration option beyond that appropriate for a brief Use of the user manual is highly re	Export XML	
Communications		
Every item on this page you origina		
the initial setup wizard.		

To view help, click the help icon on the right (the blue question mark circle icon) and the help will appear on the left.

Scroll through and read what you need. To hide the help and make the menus re-appear, click the X at the upper right of the help screen.

All topics in the main window are covered in help.

# **About and Diagnostics Page**

There is a special page in Retain containing credits for those who helped with the project.

There are also valuable diagnostics on this page. When you tune the memory usage of the Retain components, you may want to refer to these diagnostics and statistics.

To get this page from anywhere in the administrative console of Retain, click on the GWAVA logo in the top left corner, or the 'about' link in the top right.

There are two parts to this screen. The credits part is at the top.



The diagnostics part is below.

Operational statistics are listed such as uptime, component version numbers, directory paths and memory statistics.

Below that, the buttons will give you more detailed diagnostic information. Generally, you will only use these at the request of technical support.

Please pay particular attention to the Tomcat memory statistics. This information is needed to fine tune Tomcat.

uptime	0d : 1h : 9m	
currentTime	Tue Aug 02 22:51:48 MDT 2011	
timezone	Mountain Standard Time	
retainName	SLES11x64	
jvmVersion	20.1-b02	
jreVersion	1.6.0_26-b03	
javaHome	/opt/beginfinite/retain/java6/jdk1.6.	0_26/jre
tomcatHome	/opt/beginfinite/retain/tomcat	
indexDoc	45363	
logHome	/opt/beginfinite/retain/tomcat/logs	
osArchitecture	amd64	
osName	Linux	
userName	tomcat	
tmpDir	/var/cache/retain-tomcat5/work/Cat	alina/localhost/RetainServer
tomcatVersion	Apache Tomcat/5.5.27	
tomcatFreeMemory	193878	
tomcatMaxMemory	932096	
tomcatTotalMemory	250752	
indexEngine	lucene	
indexHost		
indexPort	10000	
indexProtocol	http	
retainHome	/opt/beginfinite/retain/RetainServer	
retainEdition	Standard	
retainBuild	250	
retainAvailability	alpha	
configSchema	16	
messageStoreSchem	a 3	
indexingSchema	1	
derbyVersion	10.5.3.0	
indexingType	lucene	
indexingVersion	3.0.3	
hibernateVersion	3.3.2.GA	
	1	
Core Info	JAR List	Jobs
Schedules	Profiles	Workers
Quartz	Retention Date Utility	Indexer Status
Exchange Test	GW to Exchange Migrator	GW to Exchange Scope
Mailbox Merger/Spli	tter Indexer Test	System Properties

### **Diagnostic Buttons**

In usual operation, none of these buttons will be used without instruction of support. The diagnostic buttons found on the diagnostics page are used in conjunction with support and can be dangerous for the system if used without understanding or instruction. The utilities contained here display or modify core settings and functions of the Retain Server. Mismanagement of these functions may render the Retain Server unmanageable and in a nonfunctioning state.

### Core info, JAR List, Jobs, Schedules, Profiles, Workers

The **Core info, JAR List, Jobs, Schedules, Profiles,** and **Workers** buttons initiate a download of the configuration .xml for each of those categories. All configuration tied to those items which have been configured in the Retain Server will be contained in the downloaded .xml and can be used to examine recorded configuration.

### Quartz

The **Quartz** button displays a page containing all information and configuration for the Quartz scheduler. These settings determine when jobs start, when maintenance is, and time in the system.

### **Retention Date Utility**

The **Retention Date Utility** tests the retention and purge flags in the mail systems. It is set in UNIX time stamp format, and should not be used without express guidance from Support.

### **Indexer Status**

The **Indexer Status** displays the current health of the indexer engine along with the total unindexed items and associated memory load. There is also an option to shut off or to turn on the indexer. As the indexer should be alive at 'on' at all times during normal operation, only use this utility under instruction from Support.

### Exchange Test

The **Exchange Test** utility attempts to connect to and login to the specified mailbox in the Exchange mail system, utilizing current configuration from the Exchange module, if configured. This is used to ensure that sufficient rights and access is open to Retain in the Exchange system. A target mailbox different from the Retain 'service' account must be specified.

### Mailbox Merger / Splitter

This utility lets you move a mailbox to belong to part of the virtual mailbox of another entity. It should be	used with care, and knowledge. Backups recommended.			
Merge				
Source Mailbox: admin (po.dom) The virtual mailbox associated with this item has the following mailboxes connected to it: • admin (po.dom), which has these mailbox types connected: • gw (4AC5FF80-11DB-0000-B1DB-F15CE5F2B5EF)	DestinationMailboxGroup: New Entity This uid doesn't have ANYTHING associated with it			
After moving, if the original entity container is now orphaned, remove it				
Merge				
Batch Load from a File				
See mergesample xml for the format.				
XML File: Browse				
Merge				

Mailboxes may be automatically merged by the Retain system if configured correctly under the Module Configuration | <u>Mailbox Mapping</u> options screen, but it must be done in correct order or the system will not recognize that a change has occurred and the merge will fail. Automatic merge can only be performed once.

Manually merging and splitting mailboxes is repeatable and is also the only way to undo a merge, automatic or otherwise. A batch load may be created and processed, but requires specific formatting, see the 'mergesample.xml' for format information.

Merging accounts creates a connection between two existing entities in the Retain database by merging their UID's in Retain, and allows a user with two differing email accounts, or one account repeated on two different systems, to manage their mail from within the same interface without having to search for and select a different account, or separately logging-in to two different systems.

To merge two addresses, first select the source mailbox and then select the destination mailbox. After the desired mailboxes have been selected, click the green 'merge' button.

To remove currently merged accounts, select the account you wish to sever as the source mailbox and merge it to a 'new entity'. Because the merge utility relies on tying entities to accounts in the database, the 'new entity' simply unties the account

Merge			
Source Mailbox:		DestinationMailboxGroup:	
Administrator (LION.lion.gwava.com)		New Entity	-
Administrator (LION.lion.gwava.com) migration (LION.lion.gwava.com)	a mailboxes connected to it.	New Entity Administrator (LION.lion.gwava.com)	^
migration3 (LION.lion.gwava.com) migration4 (RHINO.lion.gwava.com) migration5 (LION.lion.gwava.com)	se mailbox types connected: ∋ 56566c)	migration (LION.lion.gwava.com) migration3 (LION.lion.gwava.com) migration4 (RHINO.lion.gwava.com)	=
David Andersen (P01.Domain) f David Anderson (LION lion.gwava.com) Jason Bailey (P01.Domain) Jason Bailey (LION.lion.gwava.com) Russ Bateman (RP11NO.lion.gwava.com) Russ Bateman (P01.Domain) Michael Bell (LION.lion.gwava.com)	move it	migration5 (LION.lion.gwava.com) David Anderson (PO1.Domain) David Anderson (LION.lion.gwava.com) Jason Bailey (PO1.Domain) Jason Bailey (LION.lion.gwava.com) Russ Bateman (RHINO.lion.gwava.com) Russ Bateman (PO1.Domain)	
Ben Bishop (LION.lion.gwava.com) Ben Bishop (PO1.Domain) Brice Bitter (LION.lion.gwava.com) Brice Bitter (PO1.Domain) Colin Bretagne (LION.lion.gwava.com)		Michael Bell (LION lion gwava.com) Ben Bishop (LION lion gwava.com) Ben Bishop (PO1.Domain) Brice Bitter (LION.lion gwava.com) Brice Bitter (PO1.Domain)	
Tony Caras (RHINO.lion.gwava.com) Tony Caras (PO1.Domain) Marlow Draney (RHINO.lion.gwava.com)	τ.	Colin Bretagne (LION.lion.gwava.com) Tony Caras (RHINO.lion.gwava.com) Tony Caras (PO1.Domain)	

from any other connections. Tying a user to a new entity does not create any new, floating entities or make any changes in the mail systems; it only severs the selected account from previously merged accounts.

#### **GW to Exchange Scope**

The GroupWise to Exchange Scope utilizes mailbox mappings to direct data from the mailbox and is

required for the Migration.	From this point you can create a new scope file or modify an existing scope file. Please select o	ne of the two options to continue.
The scope is used to specify		
which users are to be		Browse_
included in a migration job. If	New Scope File	Load Existing Scope File
a user's mailbox data is		Load Existing Scope File
desired to be migrated from		
GroupWise and placed into		

Exchange, they must be included in a scope file used by the migration.

Select 'New Scope File' unless a scope file already exists and is to be modified. After an uploaded file is loaded and modified, a new file will be created.

From the new scope page, users which have been merged are displayed below. For any users to appear, their accounts must first be merged.

	Source	Destination	
F	BenB Ben Bishop benb@retaintesting.gwava.com	benb Ben Bishop benb@jon.gwava.com	
	BriceB Brice Bitter briceb@retaintesting.gwava.com	briceb Brice Biter briceol@lion.gwava.com	
	Candace Candace Riedelbach candace@retaintesting.gwava.com	candace Candace Riedelbach candace@don.gwava.com	
	DaronP Daron Parcell daronp@retaintesting.gwava.com	daronp Daron Parcell darong@lon.gwava.com	
	DavidM David Morgan davidm@retaintesting.gwava.com	davidm David Morgan davidm@glon.gwava.com	
	EricM Eric Maughan ericm@retaintesting.gwava.com	enicm Erciklaughan ercinn@glon.gvava.com	
	Ernie Ernie Riedelbach ernie@retaintesting.gwava.com	ernie Ernie Riedebach ernie@jon.gwava.com	

Select the desired users from the list by selecting the checkbox next to the name. A global select option is available at the top.

Once the desired users have been selected, click on the 'Generate Scope File' button to create and download the scope file.

#### **GW Exchange Migrator**

The GroupWise to Exchange Migrator is enabled via an additional license file. Because of the complexities of the Exchange environment and possible configuration options with Retain, it is recommended that you consult with your reseller or GWAVA Sales Engineer who can provide the license as well as assistance to ensure a successful system migration.

Warning	×
You can really badly break a mail system with this tool.	
By clicking "Agree" below you understand the risks associated with this utility and that use is governed by the end user license agreement.	
Agree Cancel	//

Copyright © 2012 GWAVA Inc. All rights reserved.

The process to migrate mail from GroupWise to Exchange begins with an existing Exchange system containing existing accounts equivalent to those found in GroupWise. The GW to Exchange migrator will not create accounts, it must have destination accounts to place the mail, and be told which types of mail, and which accounts to put it into.

Migrating data from GroupWise to Exchange is not a straight-forward endeavor, as Exchange contains default settings which, at default, block messages from 'untrusted' source, messages with specific attachment types or attachments which are too large. (Default limit for Exchange is 10 mb.) Setting appropriate trusted message types, sources, and size settings in Exchange are the responsibility of the system administrator. GWAVA Inc. is not responsible for any data that is not migrated due to incorrect settings.

To migrate data from an existing GroupWise system into an Exchange system, several steps must be performed in correct order.

- 1. Configure and cache the address book for both GroupWise and Exchange modules.
- 2. Merge the virtual Retain accounts either <u>manually</u> or via the automatic merge though <u>mailbox</u> <u>mapping</u>
- 3. **Immediately** run an <u>Address book refresh</u> from the modules page. (If the address book is not recached *immediately* after an automatic merge, the merge will fail and addresses will have to be manually separated and re-connected. Forcing a failed automatic merge can be accomplished by contacting GWAVA Support.)
- 4. Create a migration scope profile
- 5. Open the migration tool and fill in the pertinent information
- 6. Run the migration

To initiate a migration, select the 'GW to Exchange Migrator' from the diagnostic page. (If your system license does not enable Migration, you will be notified; contact your Retain sales representative.)

The migration tool requires a scope, which functions as a profile for the migration specifying included mailboxes, types of mail to be migrated, and the applicable date range. When an appointment is migrated from GroupWise into Exchange, an alarm can be set in the Exchange system to notify the user of the active appointment. The optional start date creates alarms only for appointments after specified date.

Migrate Store		×
	Enable Null Mode	
Default Sender:		
Start Date:		
End Date:		
Scope File:	Browse	
Duplicates:	Ignore (Create Duplicates) 👻	
M		
Message Types:	V Mail	
	Appointment     Note	
	Task	
	V Phone	
Enable Alarms:	Set Alarms for appliclable items	
Start Date:	Set Alarms for appliciable items	
Alarm Time (Minutes	): 15	
Submit Can	cel	
		//

When using the 'Migrate Store' option, only users specified in the scope will be migrated. Browse to the saved scope file, set the start and end date, (blank migrates everything), the message types desired, and then click 'submit' to initiate the migration. If a specific user is necessary for mail system operation, specify a default sender name.

Migrate Address Book migrates the users' personal address book for the users specified in the scope file.

Be sure to manage the duplicates accordingly, as the migration may be performed multiple times.

Migrate Address Book		×
	🔲 Enable Null Mode	
	Process Frequent Contacts Address Book	
Default Sender:		
Persisted Files Location:	/var/cache/retain-tomcat5/work/Catalina/localhost/RetainServer	
Scope File:	Browse	
Duplicates:	Ignore (Create Duplicates) 🐱	
Submit Cancel		
		/

#### Indexer Test

The indexer test utility provides a simply and quick query to the index engine and database. This is used as a low-level diagnostic tool for Support and is best used in conjunction with Support. Normal operation does not require any use of this tool.

#### System Properties

The System Properties utility displays basic system information and settings about the Retain Server, host environment, and functioning parts.

# Appendix A: Backing up Retain

There are a few areas of Retain that are important to backup.

- ASConfig.cfg
- > License
- Indices
- > Archive
- SQL Database

The storage directory and location holds all of these files, and the backed up versions of those that should not be backed up while in use. (To find your storage location, see the <u>Storage tab</u> under Server Configuration.)

Retain automatically creates a backup of certain files, you may specify the settings for the Lucene index backup under <u>Maintenance</u>. Retain will automatically backup ASConfig.cfg and Lucene Indices. (Exalead indices are **not** backed-up by Retain, as Exalead is a completely separate system and should be backed up individually.) These backups are located in the storage location, under the backup directory. The Archive and the License are kept in the storage location as well, though Retain does not create backups of these, so these require a manual backup.

The sensitive location to backup for Retain is: <your storage location>/backup <your storage location>/license <your storage location>/Archive

Steps to back up the SQL database are dependent on the SQL database. See the recommendations of your SQL vendor to find instructions and backup procedures.

### Fine tuning GWAVA Retain Tomcat Memory Usage Tuning Overview

WARNING: Failure to tune Tomcat's memory usage will guarantee failure of the Retain components and may lead to severe and irreparable data loss and/or corruption!

The Tomcat servlet container is configured with parameters to indicate how much memory is available for allocation to web applications. Regardless of the amount of physical memory available in the server machine, Tomcat will never exceed these values.

Tomcat is preconfigured with extremely conservative memory allocation parameters— usually from 64 MB to 256MB RAM parameters. This is by design, to avoid taking away too much memory away from other server processes. <u>Once memory is allocated by Tomcat, it is NEVER returned to the general server memory pool.</u>

### **Two Critical Issues**

However, Tomcat's conservative settings present two critical issues:

- The memory allocation is shared among all web applications running under the Tomcat instance. You cannot specify a specific amount to be reserved for one specific web application. This is the major reason it is strongly recommended that Retain components (especially the Server component) run on a dedicated Tomcat instance on a dedicated server -- Other web applications such as WebAccess, iManager, iFolder, etc., may consume too much of the shared resources.
- The preconfigured memory parameters <u>may</u> be sufficient for the Retain Worker components. They are definitely not sufficient for the Retain Server component.
   Failure to alter these parameters will guarantee a slow Retain Server, or severe unexplainable crashes and/or irreparable data loss. Recovery of information can potentially be impossible.

Hence, it is crucial that the administrator carefully examine and alter the memory allocation parameters on each server.

### **General Recommendations**

The following are our general recommendations for the maximum memory allocation parameter. The initial memory allocation parameter may be anywhere from 50%-100% of these values. These parameters are discussed in more detail in the next section.

### **Retain Server Component**

A minimum of 1 GB of RAM is recommended. For larger systems, 2-3 GB RAM may be fully warranted. Remember, if this RAM is in use by Tomcat, it is unavailable to other server processes – leave sufficient physical RAM for these. Of course, these others server processes are ideally minimal. Also, remember this memory is shared with other web applications.

#### **Retain Worker Component(s)**

The Retain Worker component(s) have been designed to be light weight. Nonetheless, a minimum of 64 MB RAM is recommended, and 160 MB is strongly recommended, to give room for future functionality.

Remember, if this RAM is in use by Tomcat, it is unavailable to other server processes – leave sufficient physical RAM for these. Also, remember this memory is shared with other web applications.

### **Tomcat Configuration Parameters**

There are three significant parameters:

- 1) Memory allocated upon Tomcat startup
  - Indicates how much memory is immediately allocated and reserved to Tomcat upon startup. This memory will be in usage for the entire lifetime of Tomcat and never available to the other server processes.
  - Typically this is set to 50%-100% of the maximum memory parameter discusses below. It can be lower, but pre-allocating a sizeable percentage of memory *enhances performance* and reduces memory fragmentation.

### 2) Maximum Memory available to Tomcat

- If the memory usage grows beyond the startup allocation, Tomcat will allocate additional blocks of memory in chunks as needed up to this limit. It will never return this memory to the general server memory pool. (Although memory internally will be freed and reused for Tomcat applications).
- Tomcat guarantees that it will never exceed this memory allocation parameter. If Tomcat runs out of memory, it will try to reclaim unused memory via garbage collection. If this is insufficient, the web application will be denied the memory allocation. Unpredictable (but invariably unpleasant) results will then occur.

This is the most critical parameter to tune.

### 3) Stack Size

- For each thread (which includes each and every concurrent user request), Tomcat will allocate stack space.
- > This value is typically measured in KB, and defaults to 512KB.
- It is allocated per concurrent users, and is in fact far too generous a number in general. 1000 users for example would take 500 MB of RAM just for stack space, before the program even allocates memory to run!
- Generally we recommend reducing this number to 128k-160k. Increase conservatively, in 64 KB chunks, if you see out-of-stack-space errors in the logs.

### How to change memory values

#### Linux Embedded Tomcat Memory Tuning

For Embedded Tomcat which ships with Retain, Edit the following configuration file: <<Tomcatconfigurationfilej2ee location>> <<</etc/opt/beginfinite/retain/tomcat/j2ee>>

Edit the following line with the appropriate parameters for your system:

CATALINA\_OPTS="-Xms256m -Xmx1024m -Xss160k"

This line sets the initial memory pool at 256MB, the maximum at 1024MB, and the stack size at 160KB.

By default, the embedded Tomcat is pre-tuned for basic functions, with 1024MB as the default for the Retain Server, and 256MB for the Retain Worker. THIS WILL NOT BE ENOUGH IN A FULL PRODUCTION ENVIRONMENT. Please tune to fit your system needs.

#### Windows Embedded Tomcat memory tuning:

- Go to the System Tray icon for Tomcat. (If using the embedded Retain Tomcat, launch tomcat5w.exe located in C:\Program Files\Apache Software Foundation\Tomcat 5.5\bin. Skip step 2.)
- 2) Choose configure.
- 3) Go to the Java tab.
- Set the Minimum Memory (always used), Maximum Memory, and Stack Size. (Retain Tomcat is pre-tuned to 1GB for the Server, and 256MB for the worker, and 160K stack size.)

#### **Checking memory:**

After logging into Retain Server, click the bug icon at the upper left. Among other stats, you'll see the tomcat Memory statistics. These are for all web apps, not just Retain Server.

### **UPGRADED SYSTEMS**

If you upgraded, it is STRONGLY recommended to return any previous memory tuning back to normal for the original Tomcat while using the embedded Tomcat that comes with Retain. If you are not using the standard Tomcat for any other web resource, simply uninstall or completely disable the standard Tomcat installation.

#### Windows:

The embedded Tomcat installation overwrites the standard Tomcat installation, and any memory tuning you have previously completed no longer is in effect.

# **Appendix B – Troubleshooting for Common GroupWise Problems**

General GroupWise Error troubleshooting can be effectively done by checking the GroupWise documentation. For any error code not found below, download and check the GroupWise documentation. (http://www.novell.com/documentation/groupwise.html select your GroupWise version and have a look into the Troubleshooting guide for the Error Messages.) Or, the GroupWise online documentation is usually found at wwwnovell.com/documentation/<groupwiseversion>/ i.e.

http://www.novell.com/documentation/gw8/ http://www.novell.com/documentation/gw7/

From the troubleshooting menu, select 'Error Messages' Some common error codes are:

Some common error

EA04

EA04: The response is too large, SOAP protocol error, or the POA received too much data at once.
 This error message is largely invalid and gets thrown due to a bug in the current (7.0.2)
 GroupWise Post Office Agent. Retain has been tested with multiple attachments, some even tens of megabytes in size, that it does get the entire attachment.

To change the setting, edit the POA startup file and add the /soapsizelimit variable. Please consult the Novell GroupWise online documentation for the syntax.

Example on NetWare: /soapsi zel i mit - 2048

The real solution will be in GroupWise 7 SP3. One workaround is to set the chunking size limit to 2048. We will only take 1024 chunks, and this setting is sufficiently high to fool the POA into not throwing the message.

## D712/D714

D712/D714	The administrator has disabled/expired the entire post office or a specific user database.
	Retain cannot log in.
D714	The Database is temporarily disabled. GroupWise believes a MOVE is in progress.
	The MOVE must complete before Retain is allowed to log in.
C05D	
C05D	Item store is missing from Database. A mandatory database file is missing.
	This implies one of two possibilities:
	1) Significant database corruption in the user database, which may be fixed
	with GWCHECK. or

2) This account has never been logged into before. Until an account is logged into at least once from the GroupWise client, Retain cannot access it.

## Other notes regarding GroupWise 7, SP 3 (7.0.3):

Retain cannot access mailboxes with either of the following set

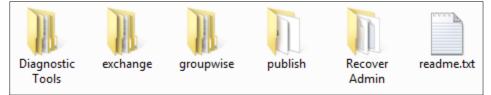
- Limited client license

Novell will be addressing the limited client license issue in GroupWise 7 SP 3.

# Appendix C – The Tools Folder

There is a TOOLS folder included in the Retain download package.

The tools are grouped into categories, diagnostic and Retain archive tools and platform specific:



## **GroupWise tools**

## **GroupWise Archive Migration Tool**

This migration tool is designed to import native GroupWise archives directly into Retain. There are two modes:

- Run at all workstations mode.
   From a command line, you'll run this and it will log into the users mailbox, and then open the local archive. It will then feed messages directly to Retain.
- 2. Centralized run.

This only works if you have all archives stored at a central point. In this case, one can conveniently run all of the migrations from a single workstation, and not involve the users at all.

## **Archive Migration Tool**

The Archive Migration Tool is for taking your existing native GroupWise archives and sending them to your Retain archive.

The directory contains 5 files:

- 1) The migration tool itself.
- 2) The migration tool configuration utility.
- 3) Two support DLL's and a readme file.

#### System Requirements

- > A Windows XP workstation running GroupWise client 7.0.1 and up.
- Access to the archives you want to migrate.

#### **Overview; Modes of Operation**

The migration tool uses the GroupWise client to access the archives you want to migrate.

- In single-user mode, the migration tool will access the mailbox of the logged-in GroupWise user and it will read the archives available to the GroupWise client and send them to the Retain Server you specify.
- In *multi-user mode*, it will use the trusted application key to log in to the mailboxes of the users specified in a chosen GroupWise distribution list, attempt to access the archives defined in their mailbox and will send them to the Retain Server you specify.

#### How it Works

The migration tool does not access the archive files directly. Due to the way GroupWise stores its archives, you need the GroupWise client to read the archives and to hand the data to the migration tool. The migration tool then sends the archives to a Retain Server, much like a worker would. In normal operation, a Retain Worker reads data from the live GroupWise system and sends it to a Retain Server. With the migration tool, the tool itself is a worker that reads the archived data from the GroupWise client and sends it to a Retain Server.

The migration tool reads the path to the archives as defined in the GroupWise mailbox that you're accessing. That path must be accessible by the workstation you're on. It will then ask GroupWise to open the archives and it will read the items in the archive and send them to the Retain Server you have specified.

If you run in single-user mode, the migration tool will access the mailbox currently logged into by the GroupWise client. If none is logged in, GroupWise will be opened and you will be asked to log in.

If you run in multi-user mode, the migration tool will open GroupWise, you can be logged in as any valid user, and it will use the trusted application key to log in to each user specified in a GroupWise distribution list, one at a time.

#### Prerequisites

The GroupWise client on the workstation you're using MUST be able to open the archives you wish to migrate. The process depends on GroupWise being able to access these archives. If you're migrating the archives of another user, as you would be doing in multi-user mode, you MUST be able to access that user's archives from the workstation you're on.

It is not enough that the archives are on a network-accessible volume. GroupWise must be aware of the path to these archives and that path must be available from the workstation you're going to use for migration. Refer to the <u>Error Handling</u> section for important configuration.

#### Setting It All Up

In multi-user mode, you can use one workstation to migrate the archives of multiple users. In so doing, you can migrate the data without affecting the user(s) in question. In single-user mode, you will run the migration tool on a workstation that has access to the archives you want to migrate (typically the workstation of the user whose archives you're migrating) and you'll migrate just one mailbox.

- 1) Copy the migration tool files to any directory accessible to your workstation.
- 2) Log in to the Retain Server you want to migrate the archives to.
- 3) Create a new worker. You're not actually installing a new Retain Worker anywhere; you're creating a new bootstrap file for the use of the migration tool so it knows which Retain Server to send the archives to. Be sure the settings listed are accessible and usable by the workstation where you will be running the migration tool. The migration tool will use these settings to log into the Retain Server.

Polling Logging	Connection Module specific Status Bootstrap
Server Connectio	nn
	ed to know how to connect to the Server. It is highly recommended that you use a DNS host name for the Host Name. It's important to note that you URL from the point of view of the <b>Worker contacting the Server</b> , which may or may not match the URL you'd use from your browser to reach the
	using the Reload interface, note the worker password assigned must be the same for each worker that contacts the Reload Server. As part of setting of you must know this password.
Server Protocol	http 👻
Server Host Name	192.168.1.106
Server Port	80
Server Path	/RetainServer
Worker Password	••••••
Note: Changing an	y of these parameters will require recopying the worker bootstrap file!

4) Once you've saved changes, you will be able to save the bootstrap file. Save it in the directory of the migration tool.



5) Now start up the migration tool configuration utility. A window will open on top of the configuration utility requiring the location to find the bootstrap file you have just saved.

Welcome to the GroupWise Archive Migration Tool
🗮 Retain
You use this program to set up the options for the Migration Tool, which is used to move e-mail from a Group/Wise archive into the Retain retention system. You may either run this tool on individual archives or many at once (assuming you have file access to the archive directories.
Before proceeding, create a new Worker component in the Retain Server, and under the Bootstrap tab, save the configuration file (RetainWorker.cfg) to an accessible location. This file will be used to connect to the Retain Server using the LRL and password information you provide.
Below, specify EITHER the path to the RetainWorker.cfg you saved, OR a previous migration tool configuration file you created with this program.
"C: \Users\worknew\Desktop\Retain250beta_104\tools\groupwise\Migration Tools\GroupWise Archive Migration\Mi 選
Cancel

(This window will also accept saved configurations from previous sessions.)

#### **Archiving Behavior**

Date Range – limits or specifies specific mail to process based on a date range.

Archive Directory – The location of the archive or archives to be migrated. The default path is assumed unless selected to be specified.

Miscellaneous – contains the options to preserve the routing properties in the archive or to add a marker file when the migration is complete.

	e						
Process all messages in t	the archive, regardless of c	iate					
🚺 If archiving oc	courred previously, set the l	peginning date to	the last ite	em archiv	ed		
Only process items within	in a specified date range:	11/19/2007 -	to 11/1	19/2007	Ŧ		
Let GroupWise automatic     Use the path specified be						· · · · ·	
<ul> <li>Let GroupWise automatic</li> </ul>	ically try to open the archiv					· · · · ·	
Let GroupWise automatic     Use the path specified by	ically try to open the archiv selow as the base path. All a		s will be as	ssumed to	be direct sub	· · · · ·	

Migration Tool Configuration Ut

#### **Configure User Interface**

When the Migration Tool is Started - Begin without user intervention the archive process immediately begins without any prompts. Run minimized sets the migration utility to run the migration in the background while the workstation completes other work. The tool may also be set to run automatically on system boot, in case something interrupts the archive job.

When Migration Tool is Running - Contains options to prohibit the user exiting the program before the archive migration is complete and GroupWise login settings. The

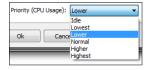
chiving Behavior Configure User Interface Multiple Archive Processing	Errors Logging Retain Server Connection
When the migration tool is started	
Begin archiving without user intervention	
Run the tool minimized in the System Tray	
Add the tool to the Startup menu of Windows, so if it is interrupted i	it will run again on reboot.
While the migration tool is running	
Do not permit the user to exit the tool before it has finished	
Prompt for GroupWise Login	
$\bigodot$ Use current GroupWise Login, or wait silently for valid login	
When the migration tool starts, it must have some way to log into a val information or the migration tool can wait in the background until the u	id GroupWise account. Either the user may provide the login ser has logged into GroupWise and then use that account.
When the mgration tool has finished	
Exit the tool automatically	
Let the user know the migration is complete with a popup	
Phonty (CPU Usage): [Lower •]	
Ok Cancel	Version: 2.0.2.291

tool must be able to login and gain access to the archives.

When the Migration Tool has Finished – Contains the behavior of the migration utility on completion;

automatic exit, notification, or neither.

The CPU priority usage is also set here.



#### Multiple Archive Processing

In order to process more than one user archive the option must be enabled at the top of this page and the users must be verified against the GroupWise system. It is recommended to only process multiple archives from the same post office.

The Multiple User section only appears in **multi-user mode**. (If you click "scan multiple user archives".) It displays the available distribution lists. The archives belonging to the users in the selected distribution list(s) will be migrated. If users from multiple Post Offices are to be migrated, employ some kind of FID

GroupWiles Server Dr: provo 1.gwava.com GroupWiles Server port: 1677  dect Distribution Lists  D Clash Prevention  O Clash Prevention  Verify Current User Matches GW Archive		User Intertace   Humple And	ive Processing Errors Logging	Retain Server Connect	on
elect Distribution Lists Refresh Refresh	Enable Multiple User Pr	rocessing Using GW Distribution	Lists		
Telect Distribution Lists Refresh Refresh Refresh Refresh Verify Carrent User Matches GW Archive	GroupWise Client Paramet	ters			
ID Clash Prevention	GroupWise Server IP:	provo1.gwava.com	GroupWise Server port:	1677	
Refresh     Refresh     Refresh     Refresh     Refresh	elect Distribution Lists				
Verify Current User Matches GW Archive					alarmente de la companya de la
Verify Current User Matches GW Archive					Refresh
Verify Current User Matches GW Archive					Refresh
Verify Current User Matches GW Archive					Refresh
Verify Current User Matches GW Archive					Refresh
Verify Current User Matches GW Archive					Refresh
Verify Current User Matches GW Archive					Refresh
Verify Current User Matches GW Archive					Refresh
					Refresh
Only process users in the lists where the domain is and the post attice is	FiD Clash Prevention				Refresh
	Verify Current User				Refresh
	Verify Current User	in the lists where the domain is	D (PD), PIDs are not quarantees		

clash protection by verifying archives or only processing users which can be verified by a specified Domain and Post Office, (specified in DNS:port or IP address:port).

Retain

Send an e-mail message

Ok Cancel

ten an error occurs during archiving White the error to the log file Alert the user with a populo mer

op archiving the current user after 20

vior Configure User Interface Multiple Archive Proc

EMail Options

n error occur during the archiving process, you may specify whether to alert the user or administrator or quietly write the information to a log bination of choices. You may also stop archiving the current user if the specified number of errors occur. (Enter 0 to disable this feature)

14 errors occu

#### Errors

The error limit and actions taken when an error is encountered are specified on this tab.

Errors may be written to the log file, (specified in the next tab), sent in a pop-up message to the user, or sent as an email to the specified address.

The limit of how many errors may be

encountered before the migration utility quits the current user is specified. A setting of '0' sets the limit to infinite. IMPORTANT! By default, the current user will be skipped after 20 errors by default.

If an email is desired for each error encountered, email settings must be configured. Select 'Email Options 'and input the connection information, source address, destination address, and user login information for the SMTP Mail Server.

#### Logging

The location, logging levels, and buffer of the logging screen are all configured on this tab.

Where Should Log Files be Stored - A specified path, the path to the current location of the application, or a specified path must be selected.

Amount of Detail in the Log Files – The logging level determines how much information is provided in the log files. Unless troubleshooting, log levels of 'normal' and 'errors only' are sufficient. The buffer size for the logging screen



Version: 2.0.2.201

be stored
letan/MigrationTool
9
log files
Basic Information 👻
1000 12 ines
much is stored in the log files, where they are located, and how large the scollable screen display is. Refer to the log files to

determines how much history the running log screen of the migration tool contains.

#### **Retain Server Connection**

This is an informational page showing the connection settings from the RetainWorker.cfg created in the Retain Server. If this information is incorrect, the Retain Server Connection settings must be modified under the worker configuration in the Retain Server, and a new bootstrap file downloaded for use.

Migration Tool Configuration Utility	×
Archiving Behavior Configure User Interface Multiple Archive Processing Errors Logging Retain Server Connection	
URL to connect to Retain Server: http://192.168.1.106:48080/RetainServer Name: migrator	
This information is taken directly from the original RetainWorker.cfg file that you created in the Retain Server's web interface. The information cannot be edited.	
Ok Cancel Version: 2.0.2.291	

Once the configuration has been setup as desired, click 'Ok' and select the location to save the changes into a 'MigrationTool.cfg' file.



#### Running the Migration

The migration tool will use the configuration file to run the job as you have specified in the configuration tool. You may run this tool as often as you need to set up the migration job to your liking.

When the tool runs, you will see a screen like this:

Retain Gro	upWise Archive M	igration Tool 📃 🗖 💻	×
🗯 R	Retain		
Total query: Current:	0	Average sec / mail: calculating Average Mails / sec: calculating	
Errors:	0	Current mails / sec: calculating	
[3/23/2011 10 [3/23/2011 10 [3/23/2011 10 [3/23/2011 10 [3/23/2011 10 [3/23/2011 10 [3/23/2011 10 [3/23/2011 10 [3/23/2011 10 [3/23/2011 10	0:05:10 AM] [INFO] ( 0:05:10 AM] [INFO] (	Actain GroupWise Archive Migration Tool version: 2, 5, 10, 667 Configuration loaded from file: (2) Users worknew/DesktopRetan250 Loaglie: (2) Users/worknew/DesktopRetan250beta_104/bools/group RetainServer (Like): http://1921.168,1.106;480800/RetainServer Log level: 2 Lum Minimized: False Lum Minimized: False Law Minimized: False Add to starburp: False GroupWise MajorVersion: 8 GroupWise BuildNumber: 84910	*
•			

You will see any errors in this screen and when the job is complete, it will say so.

For each user in a multi-user job, it will read the location of the archives from GroupWise and then it will attempt to open the archives. It is critically important that the workstation used for the migration can access the archive files.

#### Limit of 5 Concurrent Migrations

There is a maximum of 5 migrations permitted at any given time. For instance, if you're running the migration tool from the workstations of your users, only 5 at a time can be migrated, the others will wait their turn. This is to prevent all the migration requests from overwhelming the server.

#### **Other Notes**

The migration tool may be deployed using management tools such as Novell ZENworks. This is one method to collect archives which have been stored on users' workstations. Users may run the tool manually or it can be run automatically.

#### **The Archive Plug-in**

This is a simple C3PO plug-in for Win32 clients that allows you to

- add a Retain menu item for easy access to web archives
- hide current Archive options.

It can be run interactively or via command line. Run the program for the command line switches.

#### **Blob Extraction Tool**

This command line utility provides a quick way to extract the original contents of any compressed/encrypted blob in the system. This is for diagnostic and disaster recovery purposes. Simply type BlobExtractionTool at the command line for the usage options.

#### Single Sign On

The C3PO Plugin for Win32 now supports single sign on. To utilize the single sign on feature, the Win32 GroupWise client must have the Retain plugin installed. The Retain Plugin is located in the downloaded install source. (.../<Retain>/tools/Win32 Client Archive Plugin/Retain Archive Plugin.1.1.0.119.exe) The installer must be run on the machine where Single Sign On will be used. Single Sign requires Retain Server 1.8x. Single Sign On integrates a menu option into the GroupWise Win32 client providing easy access to online archives. The Installation requires the specified address of the RetainServer.

		_ 🗆 🔀
w Help Retain		
About Retain Plugin	ask 🕶 🎦 📃 🖼 🕶 📰 🕶 💕	
👝 Mailbox		Find: 🗸
From Subject	Date 🔺	
		Selected: 0 Total: 0
	About Retain Plugin	Open Retain Archive     cts       About Retain Plugin     About Retain Plugin       Image: State of the sta

Once selected, the Open Retain Archive option will sign the user into Retain using the GroupWise authentication active in the GroupWise client, providing a transparent login. As such, it is not recommended for use on public workstations.

The program may be run from command line, the options are:

- /url=URL (Provide URL to the Retain Server)
- /hidemenu (Hide standard GroupWise archive)
- /SILENT (Run without user intervention requires /url argument.)



#### WebAccess

(Same as Single Sign On above) Requires:

- GroupWise 8 or later
- (Installer only) Java 1.5
- > Windows or Linux

NOTE: If you are running WASP2<sup>™</sup> you must update to the latest version of WASP (Version 2.0.5) in order to continue using both WASP and the Single Sign On Retain Module on the same WebAccess server. If an earlier version of WASP is in use, it will be broken with the addition of the incompatible Retain WebAccess Single Sign On plugin.

The WebAccess module .jar file is located in the Retain install sources. After Retain has been downloaded and extracted, the .jar file can be found in the .../Retain180/tools/WebAccess plugin directory.

To install the module, run the .jar java executable file in an X session. i.e.

On Linux: java –jarRetain\_setup\_20091005.jar

On Windows: double-click the file.

For NetWare or remote systems SEE THE FOLLOWING LINK: http://support2.GWAVA.com/kb/?View=entry&EntryID=1608

Installing to a remote system **requires** direct file access.

The installer file may be run from a workstation fulfilling the requirements to install on a remote machine. To install remotely, WebAccess source directories must be exported and mounted to the workstation.

i.e.

(For Linux):

/srv/www/tomcat5/base/webapps must be exported and mounted via NFS or a SAMBA share /var/opt/novell/ must be exported from server and mounted to /var/opt/novell on the workstation.

The final step to install the WebAccess plugin is to create two folders in the Novell folder structure. Retain cannot create folders or set permissions on the host system, but requires the folders to be created in the Novell directory structure to function.

Windows:

Two folders need to be created on the GroupWise server. From where GroupWise was installed, browse to:

...\GroupWise\webaccess\retain\templates\webacc Create two new folders here: mobile simple Restart Tomcat and the plugin installation is complete.

Linux:

Retain requires two folders to be created, as well as the permissions set to match, on the GroupWise server.

Browse to: /var/opt/novell/groupwise/webaccess/retain/templates/webacc

Create two new folders here: 'mobile' and 'simple' mkdir mobile mkdir simple

Note the file permissions and owner of the 'css' folder, and change the permissions of the two new folders to match.

Restart Tomcat rcretain-tomcat restart

Once Tomcat has been restarted the plugin installation is complete.

Once installed, WebAccess will add a new tab to the User client window called "Retain", which will sign the user into Retain when selected.

#### For a text-only or shell install on Linux:

1. Copy the "WebAccess plugin" directory (or contents thereof) to the webserver where the WebAccess Application (the Tomcat servlet, not GWINTER) is installed.

2. Flag the .sh files as executable

chmod +x \*.sh

3. Run desired install:

./installtext.sh (For text mode only install)

./installgui.sh (If running X-windows system and want a graphical install)

(The folders described above must still be created on the GroupWise server.)

"WASP" and "WASP2" are trademarks of GWAVA Inc., 100 Alexis Nihon, Suite 500, Saint Laurent, Quebec H4M 2P1

#### **Exchange Tools**

The Exchange tools folder contains the tools appropriate for the Exchange mail system: personal archive migration, and single sign on plugins.

Migration	Retain	Retain
Tools	Outlook	Outlook
	2007 Plugin	Plugin

#### **Exchange PST Migrator**

The PSTMigrator is a Java utility used to input mail in the PST archives into the Retain system. The PST migrator interfaces with the Retain system through a worker configuration file to contact the Retain server and input the mail found in the PST archive to the Retain system.

The PSTMigrator should be run on the local workstation where the Outlook PST archive file is located, and requires Java to be locally installed.

The PSTMigrator requires a Worker configuration and bootstrap file to know where and how to communicate with the Retain Server.

 In the Retain Server management console, create a new worker, it would be appropriate to name it 'migrator' or 'pst migrator'. A general configuration is all that is required; no specific settings need to be changed from default, except the connection information if it needs to be modified in accordance to the needs of the local network. It is imperative that the PSTMigrator have an open connection to the Retain server. When the settings are correct, save the new worker.

Polling	Logging	Connection	Module specific	Status	Bootstrap	
Server C	Connection	1				
						mended that you use a DNS host name for the Host Name. It's important to note that
you are s			e point of view of t	he Worker o	contacting t	he Server, which may or may not match the URL you'd use from your browser to
	e Worker or	Server.				
reach the			interface, note the	worker pass	word assigne	d must be the same for each worker that contacts the Reload Server. As part of
reach the For admin	nistrators us	ing the Reload	interface, note the nust know this pass		word assigne	d must be the same for each worker that contacts the Reload Server. As part of
reach the For admin setting of	nistrators us	sing the Reload d Server, you n			word assigne	d must be the same for each worker that contacts the Reload Server. As part of
reach the For admin setting of Server	nistrators us of the Reload or Protocol	sing the Reload d Server, you n	nust know this pass		word assigne	d must be the same for each worker that contacts the Reload Server. As part of
reach the For admin setting of Server Server H	nistrators us of the Reload or Protocol	http + 192.168.1.106	nust know this pass		sword assigne	d must be the same for each worker that contacts the Reload Server. As part of
reach the For admin setting of Server Server Hi Se	nistrators us f the Reload er Protocol lost Name erver Port	http + 192.168.1.106	nust know this pass		word assigne	d must be the same for each worker that contacts the Reload Server. As part of

2. Download the bootstrap file.



 Run the PSTMigrator utility on the Windows workstation containing the pst archive file. If Java is installed, the PSTMigrator.jar file can be run simply by double-clicking on the file. When initially run, the PSTMigrator is placed in the taskbar, and must be selected to be opened.



4. Upload the Worker configuration to the PSTMigrator.

Right click on the PSTMigrator icon in the taskbar, and select 'configuration'.

The initial screen of the migrator is opened to the Retain Server Connection tab, where the bootstrap file is specified.

GWAVA PstMigrator Configuration Utility	X
😹 Retain	
Archiving Behavior Errors Logging Retain Server Connection	
URL to connect to Retain Server Worker Name	
Path to RetainWorker Configuration File	
Specify the Jacobia of a valid WarkerConfiguration File that was granted from the DatainSonger, web interface. All accorded int	
Specify the location of a valid WorkerConfiguration File that was created from the RetainServers web interface. All needed Infi Server Communication will be extracted from it.	ormation for the
Ok Cancel	Version: 0.647 beta

Browse to the location of the worker configuration downloaded in step 2, and select the configuration.

 Configuration logging, error reporting, and specify the pst archive file.

#### Logging

Log files will contain as much information as the administrator desires, from a normal or basic level, to diagnostic. Select the path for the logging files, whether that is a custom file path, application path (stored in the same folder as the application), or with the application data, (in Retain).

GWAVA PstMigrator Configuration Utility	_ <b>D</b> _ X
😹 Retain	
Archiving Behavior       Errors       Logging       Retain Server Connection         Where should the log files be stored <ul> <li>Application Data RetainIngrationTool</li> <li>Application Path</li> <li>Selected Folder:</li> <li>(pesktop/Retain250beta_85)tools/exchange/Migration Tools/Outlook PST Migration</li> <li>Amount of detail in the log files</li> <li>Log Level:</li> <li>Basic Information •</li> <li>Screen Buffer Size:</li> <li>0 ÷ lines</li> <li>Display URLs in log</li> </ul>	
You may determine how much is stored in the log files, where they are located, and how large the scrollable screen display i files to troubleshoot any errors that occur during archiving.	is. Refer to the log
Ok Cancel	Version: 0.647 beta

#### **Errors**

If an error is encountered, what the migrator utility does with that error is determined by the options configured here. The error may be logged, recorded in a popup message, sent in an email notification, or all three options at the same time.

An error limit may also be specified which determines how many errors the migrator can encounter before ceasing the migration job.

🚰 GWAVA PstMigrator Configuration Utility
😹 Retain
Archiving Behavior Errors Logging Retain Server Connection
When an error occurs during archiving
Write the error to the log file
Alert the user with a popup message
Send an email message (use email settings from worker configuration) Email Options
Stop archiving the current user after 0 the errors occur
Should an error occur during the archiving process, you may specify whether to alert the user or administrator or guietly write the information to
a log or a combination of choices. You may also stop archiving the current user if the specified number of errors occur. (Enter 0 to disable this
feature)
Ok Cancel Version: 0.647 beta

#### Archiving Behavior

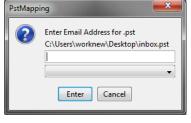
The Archiving behavior tab determines what is archived. If the pst archive file has been partially migrated at a previous time, then the PSTMigrator provides the option to only archive the parts which have not been previously archived.

The PSTMigrator also has the option to only migrate mail according to a set data range. The PSTMigrator will work on all archives listed in the Archive File window. To add an archive file to the migration list, select 'add' and browse to and select

JII V UII 12.03.2011 V	
Email Address	Action
	ACOUT
	ALUUT
	ALUUT
	ALUUT
	ALGOIT
pose to archive all messages. Furthermore you car	
	e last item archived

the desired pst archive file. After selecting the archive file, the migrator will attempt to access to the archive.

The PSTMigrator may require the email address of the source account in order to achieve access to the archive. Provide the source address.



6. Migrate the pst archive.

Selecting 'Ok' does not initiate the migrator, it only sets the configuration. To start a migration job, right click on the taskbar icon and select 'Run now'.

7. Wait for the migration to finish.

The migrator will run as a background service and complete the entire list of archives. If configuration needs to change between archives, migrate the archives separately with configuration changes in-between.

Run now
Log
Configuration
About
Exit

#### **Single Sign On**

Single sign on for Exchange comes in two different versions: one which plugs into the Outlook client, and one that works with WebAccess on the Exchange server. Select the version which fills the appropriate need.

Single sign on creates a new entry in the user interface which opens a new window directly into the user's personal Retain archive. This eliminates the need to log into Retain separately from the User's normal mail client.

#### Exchange Server WebAccess install

The WebAccess plugin installation is simple; run the installer on all applicable Exchange servers and follow the prompts.

The installer prompts for install location and for the URL of the Retain server.

IIS must be restarted. The installer offers the ability to restart IIS automatically.

#### **Outlook Plugin**

(NOTE: Trial versions of Outlook have plugins disabled; the Retain outlook plugin will not work on trial versions.)

The Outlook plugins, both the 2007 and 2010 versions, are essentially the same thing; Single Sign-on plugins for Retain which allows Outlook users to connect to the Retain archive in simply by connecting to their accounts in the Exchange system. Be sure to install the appropriate one for your system.

The module requires Outlook configured and currently running, authenticated to and part of Active Directory. For the plugin to work correctly, **administrator rights are required during instal**l. Installation is simple, run the setup.exe installer and follow the prompts. Running the setup.exe installer will download and install all necessary and appropriate files and run the .msi as appropriate. An Internet connection to the target workstation is required to download and install the necessary files, (32-bit or 64-bit as appropriate).

Uninstallation is achieved through the Control Panel | Uninstall or Change a Program utility in Windows.

Accessing the plugin is different in each version of Outlook. The Retain plugin under Outlook 2010 is found under 'Add-ins', where Retain has a toolbar button 'Open Retain'.

】 (昌 19 1 <del>年</del>	Inbox -	colinb@lion.gwava.com - Microsoft Outlook	
File Home Send / Receive Folder	View Add-Ins		۵
Open Retain polbar Commands			
<ul> <li>Favorites</li> </ul>	Search Inbox (Ctrl+E)	Re: [ngw] MessagLabs Honey pots and Groupwise 7 sending	March 2011
lnbox (292)			Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa
C Sent Items	Arrange By: Date Newest on top	-	27 28 1 2 3 4 5
Deleted Items (6)	4 Today	ngw-bounces+colinb=lion.gwava.com@ngwlist.com on behalf o	
	Paul Caron 12:04 PM	Extra line breaks in this message were removed.	13 14 15 16 17 18 19
d colinb@lion.gwava.com	Re: [ngw] Upgrading from 8.02x to 0	Sent: Sat 3/12/2011 8:13 AM	20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 1 2
inbox (292)	Joseph Marton 11:57 AM	To: ngw@ngwlist.com	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
Drafts [1]     Sent Items	Re: [ngw] turn off return email notice	Hi Elbert.	Today
Deleted Items (6)	Jon Dustin 11:52 AM	Hicibert,	Turnips; Turnip house; Michael Bell
	Re: [ngw] Upgrading from 8.02x to 8.0	I will speak with the other person in my organization who passed this	Retain Testing
G Junk E-Mail [53]	Paul Caron 11:33 AM [ngw] Upgrading from 8.02x to 8.0 0	issue on to me and get back to you.	1:30 PM - 2:00 PM GWAVA Room; Colin Bretagne
Outbox	John Dickey 11:32 AM	- ·	GWAVA Room; Colin Bretagne 🔗 i
A SS Feeds	Re: [ngw] turn off return email notice	I do know this They were speaking with the IT person at the	Tomorrow
MSN Must See (366)	🖂 Daniel Straka 11:31 AM	external firm we are trying to send to and supposedly they were in	Turnips; Turnip house; Michael Bell
MSN News (571)	Re: [ngw] turn off return email notice	communication with MessageLabs.	2 more appointments
🗯 Search Folders	Zoseph Marton 11:28 AM Re: [ngw] turn off return email notice     □♡	Let me get back to you.	
Test Shared Folder (2)		Let me get back to you.	
	[ngw] turn off return email notice	Thank you.	Arrange By: Flag: Due Date Today on top 🔶
	Tom Miller 10:50 AM	Neil	Type a new task
	Re: [ngw] Question about running G		4 ϔ Later
	Neil Carson 10:15 AM	P.S.	
	[ngw] Question about running GW 8	I also apologize for the typos in my in original post. I meant to say	Test Retain 2.5
A Mail	▲ Last Week	retry not retired (autocorrect issue)	
	Neil Carson Sat 3/12	>>> "Elbert LaGrew" <elbert.lagrew@katun.com> 03/12/11 07:54</elbert.lagrew@katun.com>	
Talendar Calendar	Re: [ngw] MessagLabs Honey pots an	AM >>>	-
Contacts	Elbert LaGrew Sat 3/12	the second se	
	Re: [ngw] MessagLabs Honey pots an	G See more about: Neil Carson.	
🥄 🥃 🚞	🛛 🗸 🖂 Elbert LaGrew Sat 3/12 🗤 💬		

In Outlook 2007, the option adds a toolbar button. To access the archive, select the 'Open Retain' button from the toolbar.

😔 Inbox - Microsoft Outlook		_ = ×
<u>File Edit View Go T</u> ool	Actions Help	Type a question for help
🔂 New 👻 🚔 🍋 🗙 🙈 B	ply 🚑 Reply to All 🚑 Forward 🔡 🚩 🚰 Send/Regeive 🗸 🍅 🛄 Search address books 💿 🗸 🔞 🗖 Open Retain 🚽 🕲 Back 🐵 🖻 🖄 🖒 🖄 outlook:Inbox	•
🧐 🕲 Back 💿 🚺 📑 🛕		
Mail «	Retain rest message thu reb to 10.00.11 LST 2011	To-Do Bar » >
Favorite Folders 🔅	🖳 🖞 🗋 🕼 From Subject Received Size ARCH 🕅 retain@test.com	<ul> <li>March 2011</li> </ul>
Drag Your Favorite Folders Here	Date: Last Month     Sent: Thu 2/10/2011 10:00 AM	Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa
Mail Folders	Orac Last working     To: Colla Bretagne     To: Colla Bretagne     To: Colla Bretagne	27 28 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
All Mail Items 👻	A pathing that came Bathing Status Thu 2/17/2011 6 VB	13 14 15 16 17 18 19
🖃 🧐 Mailbox - Colin Bretagne	Hello, this is a test message from Retain, testing	20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 1 2
Cabinet	≥ realing testion Gwava ketain: Explanation Walling Ind 2/1/2011 5 KB V the SMTP connection.	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
ingwlist (2569)	📄 retain@test.com Retain Test Message Wed Feb 16 15:2 Wed 2/16/2011 5 KB 💎	
Deleted Items (22)	🥪 retain@test.com GWAVA Retain: Expiration Warning Wed 2/16/2011 5 KB 🏹 🔤	
Drafts [3]	🧧 retain@test.com GWAVA Retain: Expiration Warning Wed 2/16/2011 3 KB 🏹 🧮	
🖃 🧖 Inbox (13)	🧧 retain@test.com Retain Status Information Tue 2/15/2011 6 KB 🏹	
Personal (29)	🧧 retain@test.com Retain Status Information Tue 2/15/2011 6 KB 🏹	No upcoming appointments.
G Junk E-mail [61]	🖂 retain@test.com Retain Test Message Tue Feb 15 15:43 Tue 2/15/2011 5 KB 🌾	
RSS Feeds	Colin Bretagne hi Fri 2/11/2011 3: 4 KB	
🔄 Sent Items	retain@test.com Retain Test Message Thu Feb 10 10:00: Thu 2/10/2011 1 5 KB	
🗷 ѿ Search Folders	Colin Bretagne FW: test doc Thu 2/2/2011 1: 91 KB	Arranged By: Due Date
	🖂 The LogMein Tea LogMein Special Offer – Only 2 Days Thu 2/3/2011 1 14 KB 🛛 🖓 📗	
	Date: Older	Type a new task
	🙈 🛛 Colin Bretagne Test xis Thu 1/27/2011 2 81 KB 🟹	🖃 🚩 Today
	🔒 🛛 Colin Bretagne test doc Thu 1/27/2011 2 90 KB 💎	Test V
	🙆 🕘 Colin Bretagne test doc Thu 1/27/2011 2 85 KB 🛛	
	🔄 The LogMeIn Team Your LogMeIn Pro <sup>2</sup> trial is expiring — Thu 1/20/2011 1 15 KB 🛛 🖓	
	🔗 mailman-owner ngwlist.com mailing list memberships Tue 1/4/2011 Si 5 KB 🛛 🏹	
A Mail	LogMeIn.com Aut LogMeIn Account Notification - Comp Wed 12/22/201 7 KB	
-	CogMein.com Aut Add this computer to LogMein Wed 12/22/201 11 KB	
Calendar	CogMeln.com Aut LogMeln - Please activate your account Wed 12/22/201 12 KB	
Contacts	mailman-owner ngwlist.com mailing list memberships Wed 12/1/2010 9 KB     Mill Conlee Ingwl De-activating mobility users Tue 11/23/2010 4 KB	
🏂 🔜 🔁 👻	<ul> <li>ngw-request@n Welcome to the 'ngw' mailing list (Di Thu 11/4/2010 1 9 KB</li> <li>ngw-confirm+8d Your confirmation is required to join t Mon 11/1/2010 10 KB</li> </ul>	-
	ray new-committeeu Tour committeeu is required to join c Mon 11/1/2010 10 Kb	

### **Recover Admin**

This is an emergency tool you can use if you happen to lose your admin account/password. This utility will let you create a new admin. Consult the readme file for further information on its use.

# **Appendix D – Reload Integration**

GWAVA Reload and GWAVA Retain perform very different functions. Retain is an archiving product whose main feature is the storage of data in one place for later search and retrieval. Reload is a Hot Backup, Quick Restore and Push-Button Disaster Recovery product whose main feature is the storage of instances of GroupWise post offices for the purposes of restoring items to their original location in their original form or providing disaster recovery of domains or post offices.

So, why would you want to integrate Reload and Retain?

- 1. Reload is very good at moving data efficiently from point A to point B.
  - a. It copies your post office data in its original form.
  - b. It can make what is effectively a full backup by moving and storing as little as 12% of the total amount of data in the post office.
  - c. By having the backed up data available in its original form, it can serve as a data source for Retain.
  - d. Reload's backups are available the moment the backup job is complete.
- 2. Retain moves a lot of data and needs strong network links to do so rapidly.
  - a. An archiving job moving "everything" will move all of the data. This may seem self evident but when you combine Reload with Retain, you can achieve the same thing by moving only 12% of the data.
  - b. If you don't integrate them, you will pull data twice over the link once for Reload, and once for Retain. On top of that, if you don't have Reload and you only have Retain, you will definitely have to move your data twice.
  - c. By integrating Reload and Retain, you can centralize your archives and ensure good backups and achieve a single data pull.

## A Brief Review on How Reload Works

#### No Helper Software Needed.

Reload runs on a Linux server. It does not use agents or helper software on the source post offices to work. In other words, no agents or TSA's are required. Reload simply connects to the server where a post office or domain is stored and then copies the data to its backup storage location.

#### Backups are instantly available.

Because the data is copied in its original format, the data becomes available as soon as a backup job is complete by simply running a post office agent (POA) against it (for post office backups) or a message transfer agent (MTA) (for domain backups).

#### Backups Have Little or no Impact on Users.

Because Reload does not use the Post Office Agent to make backups, there is very little impact on users. The POA will continue to run and service users as normal. Reload also does not use TSA software or helper agents on the live post office server. Backups can be made while the users are logged in and working.

#### Reload Leverages GroupWise's Architecture to Save Bandwidth.

A GroupWise post office is composed of databases and overflow files. Databases contain users' mailbox layouts and indexes and other databases contain users' authentication information. For any GroupWise item exceeding 2KB in size, such as e-mail with attachments, overflow files are stored, commonly called BLOBs (Binary Large Object).

While the contents of the databases changes almost constantly, the BLOBS are static. Therefore, in a Standard Backup, Reload grabs the databases in their entirety but only those BLOBS that have been newly created since the last backup.

Generally, the BLOBs take up almost 90% of the space occupied by the whole post office. Therefore, with a standard backup, Reload can get away with copying only 12% of the data – the databases and only those BLOBs which have recently been added. For those BLOBs that have been backed up in prior backup instances, Reload links to a master backup directory, taken the first time a backup was run, using a Linux feature called symbolic links. A symbolic link is like a Windows shortcut except that it looks, feels, and acts like the real thing.

This is how Reload can achieve VERY fast backups. In addition, using Reload to move data will save tremendously on network bandwidth compared to traditional backup systems which grab all of the data.

#### Backups Can be Made of Backups Allowing Centralization and Redundancy

Reload was made to backup live post offices and domains and it can also make backups of other Reload backups. The following two cases can help illustrate how useful this can be:

Consider client "A" who has two physical locations, one post office in each. This client wants redundant backups – a primary backup plus a secondary in case the primary fails.

This client installed a Reload server in each location. The servers backed up the local post office in addition to making a backup of the Reload server in the other location. Thus, each Reload box effectively had backups of both servers.

Consider client "B" who has one central data center and four branch offices. This client wants the head office to have backups of all post offices in all locations.

Branch offices 1, 2, and 3 have fast WAN links to head office but branch office 4 has a very weak connection to head office. However, branch office 4 has a strong WAN link to branch office 2. So the client installed a Reload server in each office and one in the head office. The Reload server in the head office was set to back up the Reload servers in branch offices 1, 2, and 3. For Branch office 4, the Reload server in Branch office 2 was set up to back up the data from the Reload server in branch office 4 and then the head office was set to back this data up from the Reload server in branch office 2.

Thus, backups can make as many hops and can be backed up in as many places as you need. Using the ability to backup one Reload server with another, you can achieve data centralization and redundancy. The redundancy also gives you the ability to use Reload for off-site disaster recovery. Additionally, for client "B", their old backup system moved all of the data every day. Using Reload, they managed to cut their network traffic by 88%.

# How Retain Takes Advantage of Reload's features

Consider client "B" from the earlier example who has four branch offices and a head office. They want their Retain Server to be located at head office. So they need to centralize their data.

Without Reload, they would have Retain Workers on the branch office POA servers and the data would be sent over the WAN links. For a data collection involving "everything", all data would surely saturate the WAN links.

Plus, their backup/restore software would use the WAN links too, if they were centralizing their backups.

Adding Reload to the mix, they are able to achieve huge bandwidth savings and performance gains. Reload would be set up to centralize the data to one Reload server in head office, saving immediately 88% of their bandwidth compared to their existing backup/restore system.

Next, A Retain Worker would be set up on the central Reload box to draw data from all backed up post offices.

One Retain Worker can only run one job at a time, so the post offices would be archived one at a time.

## **Multiple Workers on One Server**

It is possible to install more than one Retain Worker on one server but this would double the hardware requirements, Tomcat memory tuning, and is limited to Linux as the platform OS. This option is built into the Linux installer and is activated by using the 'addworker' switch to the install command. (I.e. ./RetainInstall.sh addworker)

You would normally only add additional workers if you wanted to dredge more than one post office at a time.

On a Reload server, it might not be so time critical to dredge the post offices on it since there is no impact on the end users. On top of that, Reload has a special feature made especially for Retain, a special post office agent that stays up all the time, except to move to the latest backup. This way, it is always available to Retain.

So you will have to decide if it is acceptable to have the post offices dredged one at a time or if you would prefer to dredge many at a time. To do many at a time requires multiple workers.

# Timing

It's important to time the data collection on Retain so that the Reload backup will be complete long before the Retain job is scheduled to start. This is set in the schedule section under the Data Collection menu in Retain.

## **Retain Settings**

The three tasks to configure Retain to work with reload are to assign the reload password for the worker, assign the running jobs to use the Reload integration, (this setting is found in the Jobs configuration page in the Retain management console), and configure the Profile to use the <u>Item store</u> flag for duplicate checking.

Enter the management console, and select Jobs from the Data Collection menu.

🖕 Jobs 🚽 🔁 🥥
first backup reload job Edit Job Remove Job
Tob reload job added.
Job reload job
Core Settings Mailboxes Reload Notification Status
Reload
You can backup your GWAVA Reload server, saving network bandwidth if desired. You'll need Reload 2.5, and some settings set on the Reload machine. Please consult the user manual for additional information.
Enable Reload Integration?  Reload Server URL http://10.1.1.101:55:

Create or select a job which you desire to use against the Reload system, and select the Reload Tab. You must select the Enable Reload Integration option, as well as supply the correct connection address for the Reload Server URL. (Both IP address and DNS name will work, but DNS is recommended wherever possible.)

Set the rest of the Core Settings, Notification, and Status as you would normally for your Retain system, but note that in the Mailboxes section you MUST assign the mailbox that Reload is backing-up. Save the changes.

To specify the Reload –Retain password to the worker, open the specified worker in the worker settings page, and click on the Connection tab. Specify the new Worker Password by entering it into the provided field and then click 'Save changes' in the top corner of the page. **You must re-upload the bootstrap file to the worker after creating a new password.** (See the worker section to get instructions on <u>correcting the bootstrap file</u>).

ame. It's importan	ed to know how to connect to the Server. It is highly recommended that you use a DNS host name for the Host t to note that you are specifying the URL from the point of view of the <b>Worker contacting the Server</b> , which tch the URL you'd use from your browser to reach the Worker or Server.
Server Protocol	http 🔽
erver Host Name	10.1.1.101
Server Port	80
Server Path	/RetainServer
Norker Password	

# How to Setup Reload to work with Retain

This part assumes that you have already set up and configured one or more Retain workers to collect data from your Reload box.

First, Reload must be set up so that the backups are available. There is a special feature in Reload for this. It calls up a post office agent that stays up all the time and it only goes down long enough to change to the most recent backup. So it will always be there with very small interruptions as the POA is brought down then up.

Setting up Reload is done on a Profile-by-profile basis. Each post office that you set up for Retain to dredge from must be configured within the profile configuration menu.

1) Start up Reload's Administration menu.



2) From the main menu, choose Profiles – Administer Profiles.

GWAVA Reload Main Menu Daemon Status [ Running ] Choose using [UP] [DOWN], [Enter] to Select		
AccessAccessBackupsRecoveryDisaster RecoveryWarningRead WarningJobsStart/Stop JobsLogsView LogsProfilesAdminister ProfilesCreateCreate ProfilesSystemAdminister SystemDOCSDocumentationINFOProgram Information		
< OK > < Exit > < Help >		

#### 3) Choose Advanced Profile Configuration Menu

Post Office Profile Administration Main Menu Choose using [UP] [DOWN], [Enter] to Select
ActionsProfile Actions MenuLogsProfile Logs MenuStandardStandard Backup (Incremental) Configuration MenuPortablePortable Backup (Full) Configuration MenuTapeTape Backup (TAR Portable Backups) Configuration MenuPreferencesPreferences Settings MenuAdvancedAdvanced Profile Configuration MenuDescriptionEdit Profile DescriptionGroupWiseGroupWise Domain & Post Office InformationINFOProfile Information
< ℃K > < Back > <main menu=""></main>

4) Choose Retain POA Menu & Settings

Choose Using [UP] [ Access Restore Live Retain Recovery Connectivity	<pre>le Advanced Configuration Main Menu DOWN], [Enter] to Select Access POA Menu &amp; Settings Restore POA Menu &amp; Settings Live POA Menu &amp; Settings Retain POA Menu &amp; Settings CONFIGURE Disaster Recovery Main Menu Modify Profile Connectivity Settings Failed Connection Retry Attempts</pre>
Process-Retry Test	Wait Interval Between Failed Connection Retrys Number of Times to Retry a Failed Process Test and Refresh the Profile Advanced Scheduling Options
< <mark>O</mark> K	> < Back > <main menu=""></main>

Copyright © 2012 GWAVA Inc. All rights reserved.

	Retain Integration POA Status [ Not Running ]
Choose using [UP	] [DOWN], [Enter] to Select
Wizard	Reload to Retain Integration Configuration Wizard
Startup	Modify Retain POA Startup File
Delete-Retain	Delete and re-create the Retain POA Startup File
Integration	Retain Integration [Enabled]
ADDRESS	Retain POA IP Address [ 10.1.1.101 ]
SOAP	Retain POA SOAP Port [ 7192 ]
CLIENT	Retain POA CLIENT Port [ 1678 ]
HTTP	Retain POA HTTP Port [ 1679 ]
SSL	SSL Encryption [ Disabled ]
Password	Retain Base Worker Password
GroupWise	GroupWise Domain & Post Office Information
Preferences	Integration Preferences Menu
Log	View Retain Integration Agent Log
Testing	Retain Integration POA Testing Menu
L	

Now it's worthwhile examining this menu. It contains all the settings you will need to make the Retain integration work. This will be a new post office agent running and it will not interfere with the POA being used to access, backup or disaster recovery. Thus, the settings NEED to be different. The easiest way to start is to run the wizard.

Here is another shot of the configuration screen after running the wizard. You will see sample settings and the menu options will be described below.

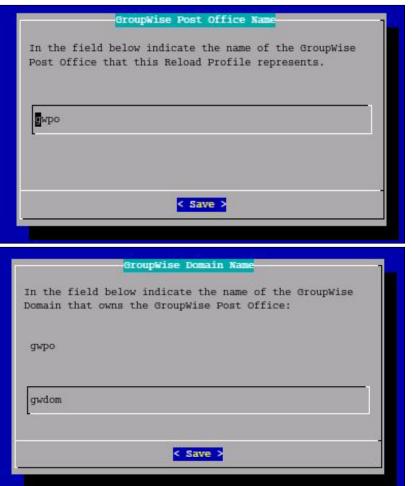
	Retain Integration POA Status [ Not Running ]
Choose using [UP]	[DOWN], [Enter] to Select
Wizard	Reload to Retain Integration Configuration Wizard
Startup	Modify Retain POA Startup File
	Delete and re-create the Retain POA Startup File
	Retain Integration [Enabled ]
	Retain POA IP Address [ 10.1.1.101 ]
	Retain POA SOAP Port [ 7192 ]
	Retain POA CLIENT Port [ 1678 ]
HTTP	Retain POA HTTP Port [ 1679 ]
	SSL Encryption [ Disabled ]
Password	Retain Base Worker Password
GroupWise	GroupWise Domain & Post Office Information
Preferences	Integration Preferences Menu
Log	View Retain Integration Agent Log
Testing	Retain Integration POA Testing Menu
L	

At the top, the status of the Retain Integration POA is displayed.

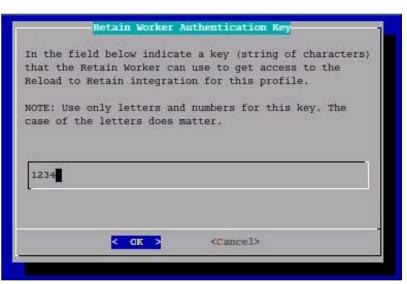
- Wizard: Run the configuration wizard.
- Startup: modify the startup file for the POA if you want to make specific changes to it.
- > Delete-Retain: delete the startup file if you want to start fresh and configure from default.
- Integration: Enable or disable the Retain Integration
- Address: The IP address this POA will listen on.
- SOAP: The SOAP port this POA will use.
- CLIENT: The port that a GroupWise client may use to access this POA.
- HTTP: The HTTP port for this POA.
- SSL: Enable or disable SSL (Generally keep SSL Disabled)
- ➢ Key: A password Retain will use to access this POA.
- GroupWise: Specify the domain name and post office name for this POA.
- Log: View the Integration Agent Log.

The wizard will be shown below.

1) Run the Wizard



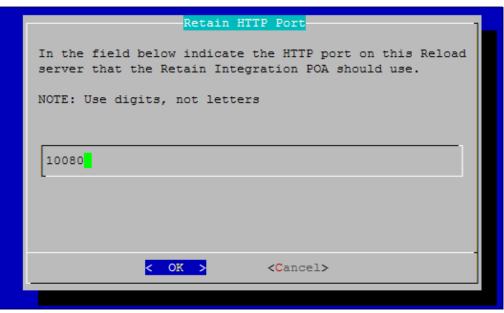
2) Enter the name of the post office and domain.



3) Choose an authentication key that Retain will use to access this POA. **This must match the password you assigned to the Retain Worker.** (See the <u>Retain Settings</u>)



4) Specify the IP address and SOAP port for this POA. **Be sure it is unique.** Some will choose one IP for the whole box with different client ports and SOAP ports for each POA. Others use the same ports but the IP addresses are different.



5) Choose the HTTP port for this POA.

Because Reload is creating a faux POA for Retain to archive mail from, the Reload POA must be on a different or unique port, so there is no conflict with your original POA. If your Reload installation is on a separate machine from your POA, any port will do, but if it is the same, pick a port that you know is open, different from the live system.

Retain will pull all necessary connection information from the Reload server. There is no need to enter these settings into the Retain Server.

Now that you have set up the basics, you may edit the POA startup file in case you wish you change any other settings, (Retain.poa), or you can re-run the wizard from step 1.

## **IMPORTANT Notes for the Integration**

#### Retain

Because Reload essentially creates a snapshot of the Post Office, the duplicate checks that Retain can use are very limited. The retention flag and purge flag will not function as they are kept within GroupWise and would be changed back as soon as Reload creates a new backup. **The Item Store Flag is the only duplicate check that is internal to Retain, and is the ONLY duplicate check ability that will work when Retain archives against a Reload system.** Again, the retention and purge flags will not work but the item store flag will. Be sure your Retain Profile matches this setting.

📛 Profiles	8 🖓
default       Add Profile         reload       Edit Profile         No jobs are associated with this Profile.         remove Profile	
Profile reload saved.	
Core Settings Scope Miscellaneous Advanced	
Date Range to Scan	
All Messages (ignore date)	
Duplicate Check	
Retain only stores a single instance of each message and attachment. Defining how the Worker determines new items (so it ma sending them to the Server) is an important performance factor. Using the retention or purge flag choices are the fastest choice these are options. Never publish all messages unless you are priming the system for the first time.	
Publish all messages newer than last stored message (fast)	

The item store flag is set in two places: Duplicate Check under the Scope tab and under Set Storage Flags under the Miscellaneous tab. The correct settings are shown.

Set Storage Flags	
If you are using either the Purge or Retention features in GroupWise, you probably want these to be advanced automatically as items are stored, so users may delete messages in their mailbox that have been stored by Retain. The Item Store flag is of similar function, stored in Retain itself, but cannot prevent users fom deleting item. It is most useful in conjunction with GWAVA Reload or in use with multiple overlapping jobs.	
🗖 Retention Flag 🗖 Purge Flag 🗹 Item Store Flag	

#### Reload

# To mitigate the chances of getting Retain Worker archive errors while working against a Reload POA, it is STRONGLY recommended that Reload is set to create highly consistent backups.

This setting is located at:

Main menu > Profiles (Administer Profiles) >Standard (Standard backup (incremental) Configuration Profile) > Consistency (Backup Consistency level): Set to highest.

-	Net Office Durfile Cherdond Declar Main Merry
-	Post Office Profile Standard Backup Main Menu
Choose using	[UP] [DOWN], [Enter] to Select
Schedule	
Customize	
Database	•
BLOBS	Standard Backup BLOBS (OFFILES) Threads Configuration
SmartPurge	SmartPurge Configuration
High	High Performance Standard Backups: [ Enabled ]
Consistency	Backup Consistency Level: [ Highest ]
DMS	Backup DMS Libraries at Post Office: [ Disabled ]
L	
	OK > < Back > <main menu=""></main>

This is enabled by default for new installs of Reload 2.5, but will have to be manually enabled on systems that are upgraded to Reload 2.5 You want a highly consistent backup, to make sure that you have all the blobs associated with the database. Database is picked-up first, so the blobs that are referenced in the database will be consistent with the current backup.

# Appendix E - Migrating Retain to a new Server or Platform

Migrating Retain between different platforms is possible, though time consuming. Retain can also be migrated between 32-bit and 64-bit systems. Migrating or moving the Retain Server can be complicated, because the different Retain components that connect to theRetain server by IP address, file paths mapped in the system, and the unique server identification which allows access to the data storage are all tied to the originalRetain Server. The important variables for theRetain Server are found in the ASConfig.cfg file. The connecting components will need new bootstrap files. In a migration, all these variables must either be corrected, or copied to the new system for the migration to be a success.

There are **no guarantees** when migrating a server. **BE SURE TO CREATE A FULL BACKUP WHEREVER POSSIBLE BEFORE STARTING THE PROCEDURE.** SQL databases and data storage systems are not supported or administered by GWAVA Inc., and are the responsibility of the local system administrator and the customer.

Regardless of the source and destination platform, the main steps will be the same. The steps for migrating aRetain Server are:

- 1. Create a backup of the server, data store, and database.
- 2. IF the SQL database is housed on the source Retain Server, copy or migrate the SQL database to its final destination in accordance with recommended practices for the respective SQL system. Setup the SQL server and get it running on the destination machine.
- 3. Download and install Retain. After Retain has been installed, shutdown Tomcat.
- 4. Copy the data store to the new destination. The data store consists of more than just the storage directory. The data store contains the configuration database, indexes, backups, license, and the archive, (if not on a SAN). If migrating to Linux, the ownership and execute rights to the data store **MUST** be changed. If ownership execute rights are not set correctly, the Retain Server will not function correctly, and will generate inexplicable errors. Commands are:

```
chown -R tomcat:www <storage_directory>
chmod -R u+rwx <storage_directory>/*
```

5. Open the ASConfig.cfg file from the old server with the text editor of choice. (Text editor must be able to view .xml files.) The following file paths which were mapped for the original server must be corrected for the new server:

```
<serverID>unique_server_ID</serverID>
```

It is ESSENTIAL that the ServerID setting be identical to the original server ID, or the migration will fail. <br/>
<br/

```
<archivePath>/retain/storage</archivePath>
<xmlPath>/retain/xml</xmlPath>
<indexPath>/retain/index</indexPath>
<backupPath>/retain/backup</backupPath>
censePath>/retain/license</licensePath>
```

```
<EBDBPath>/retain/ebdb</EBDBPath>
```

- When the ASConfig.cfg file has been modified correctly, copy the modified file into the destination server. ../RetainServer/WEB-INF/cfg
  - Once the file has been copied into the new server, start Tomcat.
- 7. Verify that theRetainServer is working. If it is not working, view errors and double-check the settings in the ASConfig.cfg file.
- 8. IF the final destination server has a different IP address than the original RetainServer had, all workers and stubbing servers must be reconfigured by re-uploading new bootstrap files for each one. If this step is not completed, the workers and stubbing server will not have contact with the Retain Server, and will not be able to function. See 'correcting the bootstrap' in the worker section.

The process should be done with extreme care and attention to detail, if not under the supervision and by the guidance of Retain Support. Completing ALL steps for your system is extremely important. If there is a problem call support and/or revert to the backup made in step one. Correctly following these steps will result in a fully functioning system on a new platform.

# Appendix F – Switching the Indexing Engine

Switching between indexing engines is possible, though frequent changing is not recommended as it is a time consuming process. This guide assumes that the system will be switched from Lucene to the more robust Exalead indexing engine, though the process is nearly identical for the switch back to Lucene, it simply requires selecting 'lucene' instead of 'exalead' when the options are provided, as the positions of Lucene and Exalead are reversed when switching from Exalead to Lucene.

#### Switching the indexer to Exalead

The Exalead indexing engine is not required, and the system can be switched from Lucene to Exalead at any time. However, the index engines are not compatible with each other and have no way to export the indexes between them, causing a need to re-index the entire mail archive each time the index engine is changed to ensure full coverage. Re-indexing the archive will take substantial amounts of time, and switching the indexing engine should only be run during a 'quiet time' when there are no jobs scheduled to run.

Exalead allows much more flexibility and options in searching and scaling. However, Exalead does require a separate physical machine with robust hardware. For a full list of Exalead requirements and install instructions, see the Exalead Install document. Switching to the Exalead indexing engine will cause some server downtime.

Before you begin the migration to Exalead for the indexing engine, you must first have Exalead installed and working. Log into the Retain Server management console as Adminitrator, and ensure that:

- > The Retain System has been backed-up.
- > Exalead serer has been Installed, setup, and is accessible .
- No deletion manager jobs should be running, or set to run.
- Indexer status is set to '0'. On Retain Server status page, the "Total emails in memory queue awaiting indexing" should show '0'. If this is not set to '0', and no job is running, contact support before performing the index engine migration.

From this point on, actual changes will be made in your Retain Server system. To change the index engine, perform the following steps

 As admin, log into the Retain Server management console and browse to the Configuration | Server Configuration page and select the Index tab and click on the 'Migration Steps' link to spawn the migration steps window.

😹 Retain 🔎	Welcome, admin   About   Status & Updates	Logout
Overview	Server Configuration	2 0
Documentation Search Messages Audit Log System Log	Communications Index Storage Accounts Maintenance Notification Logging Miscellaneous Indexing Engine	
Data Collection         Schedules         Profiles         Workers         Jobs         Management         Users         Groups         Deletion Management         Configuration         Server Configuration         Storage Manager	At the core of Retain's searching functionality is the indexing engine. Retain supports two indexing engines currently, Exalead and Lucene. It is possible to migrate from one to the other, but this may require significant effort. It is better to choose an indexing engine initially that fits your needs. Here is a brief summary of the Indexing Engines provided. There is more detail in the user manual: • Lucene - Fast and easy to use. Requires no additional software or hardware installation. Well suited for small scale environments that have only modest searching and storage requirements. Some features, such as extended queries, enhanced publishing and exporting, etc are not available using the Lucene engine. Not clusterable or high availability finendly. • Exalead - Fast, extremely powerful, and very scalable. Can be clustered with multiple index and search nodes. All Retain advanced features available. Requires one or more dedicated 64 bit servers (quad core recommended), with at least 16GB RAM. Requires an installation process. Recommended for medium to large customers, as well as organizations that need advanced searching, exporting, availability functions. If you do decide to switch indexing engines, be sure to read the user manual, and follow the Migration Steps carefully. The Migration Steps page contains a complete step by step guide, as well as special migration functionality. Current Indexing Engine: Lucene	
Stubbing Server Licensing 28 days remaining in eval	Indexing Here, you adjust the different types of items to be indexed. You may add, delete, or edit items.	

Open the migration link in a new window or tab.

dexing Engine Migration			
Summary			
Migration from one indexing engine to another is a significant step, one depending on the size of your store.	not taken lightly. Inherently the process of migratic	n requires reindexing all previous stored mail, a proce	ass which may take days or weeks
Motivations for migrating include:			
<ul> <li>Enhanced scalability and availability - for example, Exalead can be Enhanced functionality - We will be introducing features (such a features depending on the search engine might require Exalead Greater simplicity - Lucene is a simple embedded solution, Exalea</li> </ul>	s advanced search functionality, enhanced publishing		e. We expect most additional majo
We urge you to read the user manual and this page and consider your	options carefully. Click here to print this page.		
Steps for Migration			
Backup			
Backup your database, and optionally your indexes. These are both larc	in datasets, but it would be wise to back them if no	crible as a cafety procestion. There are stops that in	sur database shanges. No index
changes occur to the old index, so you could always back off to the old			
Note the Documents Indexed value			
		down. Note there is NOT a 111 correspondence bat	waan Lucana and Evaluad in the
		down, note there is not a 1.1 conespondence bet	ween Lucene anu Exaleau in trie
number, but it can be useful to track the progress once you begin rein			ween cucene and cxalead in the
In the Status and Updates screen, note the total number of Documen number, but it can be useful to track the progress once you begin rein Set up Exalead Server (If switching to Exalead) Set up your Exalead Server, using instructions in the user manual. Start server were at 10.0.0.3, with baseport of 40000, http://10.0.0.3.4000	dexing. It, wait about one minute, and then check if you c		

This window has links and information on the migration as well as the migration settings further down the page. LEAVE THIS PAGE OPEN.

2. Scroll down the page to the link to the Indexer Reset page.

DATABASE CHANGE OCCURS	SHERE AND IN FUTURE STEPS. YOU CANNOT STOP AT THIS POINT, AND DOWNTIME WILL SHORTLY BE INCURRED
	he indexed status, which is a field in the EMail table of your database server to the value 0. (After being indexed, the value is set to >0 if fully inde n any case!). Then, the background indexer will gradually reindex all of these items.
	ge Servers right (such as your initially created admin account), and run the Indexer Reset utility: http://RetainServerAddress/RetainServer at your entire message store. This operation directly affects only the message store, the index is not written too. (although the background index
Switch Indexing Engines	
In Server Configuration, under the Indexing tab, change yo the next step, without pause	ur configuration to the new engine, and configure as needed (For example baseport and host for Exalead.). Save your changes. and then continu
Set Migration Options	
	(Optional but recommended strongly)
nitially. This may be unacceptable. Instead you may want to late, as new messages will be stored in the new index only ndexed only by the NEW engine, and unavailable for search	o temporarily continue to use your old indexing engine for search results. Of course, it's important to realize the searches will get increasingly out or . You may also optionally configure an email to be sent to a designated person when the indexing is complete. Again, keep in mind all new items w results.
nitially. This may be unacceptable. Instead you may want to date, as new messages will be stored in the new index only ndexed only by the NEW engine, and unavailable for search To configure these options, fill out the following form. <b>Do r</b>	o temporarily continue to use your old indexing engine for search results. Of course, it's important to realize the searches will get increasingly out o . You may also optionally configure an email to be sent to a designated person when the indexing is complete. Again, keep in mind all new items v results. <b>not fill out and submit this form until you are ready to do so!</b>
nitially. This may be unacceptable. Instead you may want to date, as new messages will be stored in the new index only ndexed only by the NEW engine, and unavailable for search To configure these options, fill out the following form. <b>Do r</b>	o temporarily continue to use your old indexing engine for search results. Of course, it's important to realize the searches will get increasingly out o . You may also optionally configure an email to be sent to a designated person when the indexing is complete. Again, keep in mind all new items w results. <b>not fill out and submit this form until you are ready to do so!</b>
nitially. This may be unacceptable. Instead you may want to date, as new messages will be stored in the new index only ndexed only by the NEW engine, and unavailable for search To configure these options, fill out the following form. <b>Do r</b> Read the instructions below the form before filling it out an	o temporarily continue to use your old indexing engine for search results. Of course, it's important to realize the searches will get increasingly out o . You may also optionally configure an email to be sent to a designated person when the indexing is complete. Again, keep in mind all new items w results. <b>not fill out and submit this form until you are ready to do so!</b>
nitially. This may be unacceptable. Instead you may want to date, as new messages will be stored in the new index only ndexed only by the NEW engine, and unavailable for search To configure these options, fill out the following form. <b>Do r</b> Read the instructions below the form before filling it out and <b>Migration Parameters</b>	o temporarily continue to use your old indexing engine for search results. Of course, it's important to realize the searches will get increasingly out o . You may also optionally configure an email to be sent to a designated person when the indexing is complete. Again, keep in mind all new items v results. <b>not fill out and submit this form until you are ready to do so!</b>
nitially. This may be unacceptable. Instead you may want to date, as new messages will be stored in the new index only ndexed only but NEW engine, and unavailable for search To configure these options, fill out the following form. <b>Do n</b> Read the instructions below the form before filling it out an Migration Parameters Migration is in progress?	o temporarily continue to use your old indexing engine for search results. Of course, it's important to realize the searches will get increasingly out o . You may also optionally configure an email to be sent to a designated person when the indexing is complete. Again, keep in mind all new items v results. <b>not fill out and submit this form until you are ready to do so!</b>
Initially. This may be unacceptable. Instead you may want to date, as new messages will be stored in the new index only indexed only bit he NEW engine, and unavailable for search To configure these options, fill out the following form. <b>Do r</b> <u>Read the instructions below the form before filling it out and</u> <u>Migration Parameters</u> <u>Migration is in progress?</u> Activate an alternative searching server?	o temporarily continue to use your old indexing engine for search results. Of course, it's important to realize the searches will get increasingly out o . You may also optionally configure an email to be sent to a designated person when the indexing is complete. Again, keep in mind all new items v results. <b>not fill out and submit this form until you are ready to do so!</b>
Initially. This may be unacceptable. Instead you may want to date, as new messages will be stored in the new index only indexed only by the NEW engine, and unavailable for search To configure these options, fill out the following form. <b>Do r</b> <b>Read the instructions below the form before filling it out and</b> <b>Migration Parameters</b> Migration is in progress? Activate an alternative searching server? Searching Server should be Send an e-mail when migration is completed? Comma delimited list of e-mail recipients admin@bu	b temporarily continue to use your old indexing engine for search results. Of course, it's important to realize the searches will get increasingly out of . You may also optionally configure an email to be sent to a designated person when the indexing is complete. Again, keep in mind all new items v results. not fill out and submit this form until you are ready to do so! d submitting it
Initially. This may be unacceptable. Instead you may want to date, as new messages will be stored in the new index only indexed only by the NEW engine, and unavailable for search To configure these options, fill out the following form. <b>Do n</b> <b>Read the instructions below the form before filling it out an</b> <b>Migration Parameters</b> Migration in progress? Activate an alternative searching server? Searching Server should be Lucene Searching server?	not fill out and submit this form until you are ready to do so!

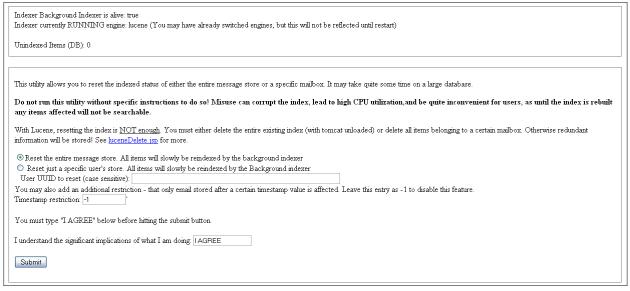
Open the link in a new page or tab. http://RetainServerAddress/RetainServer/Util/indexerReset.jsp

By default, the Indexer Reset page should look like the picture below. (Pay attention to the Unindexed Items (DB): number. It should read '0'. If it does not, do not proceed unless under the instruction of support.

Indexer Background Indexer is alive: true Indexer currently RUNNING engine: lucene (You may have already switched engines, but this will not be reflected until restart)
Unindezed Items (DB): 0
This utility allows you to reset the indexed status of either the entire message store or a specific mailbox. It may take quite some time on a large database.
Do not run this utility without specific instructions to do so! Misuse can corrupt the index, lead to high CPU utilization, and be quite inconvenient for users, as until the index is rebuilt any items affected will not be searchable.
With Lucene, resetting the index is <u>NOT enough</u> . You must either delete the entire existing index (with tomcat unloaded) or delete all items belonging to a certain mailbox. Otherwise redundant information will be stored! See <u>luceneDelete.jsp</u> for more.
<ul> <li>○ Reset the entire message store. All items will slowly be reindexed by the background indexer</li> <li>              Reset just a specific user's store. All items will slowly be reindexed by the Background indexer      </li> </ul>
User UUID to reset (case sensitive):
You may also add an additional restriction - that only email stored after a certain timestamp value is affected. Leave this entry as -1 to disable this feature. Timestamp restriction: -1
You must type "I AGREE" below before hitting the submit button.
I understand the significant implications of what I am doing
Submit

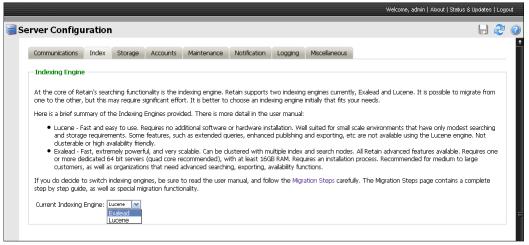
The next few steps need to be performed with little time delay between them. No more than a couple minutes. If not switched soon, the indexer reset switch will cause Lucene to re-index, instead of causing Exalead to index the message store, resulting in empty search results when switched to Exalead and slow responses due to Lucene re-indexing the message store. Read through the next steps and decide settings before proceeding. These steps must be completed in the order specified.

3. From the Indexer Reset page, Select **Reset entire message store**. Type "**I AGREE**" in the dialog after reading the warnings. Select **Submit**.



#### Proceed without delay to the next steps

4. THIS STEP MUST BE DONE QUICKLY AFTER RESETTING THE INDEX. Go the server configuration in the Retain Server admin page, and switch indexer engine to 'exalead'.



After selecting Exalead as the indexing engine, input the connection information (IP address and base port, the default base port is 10000).

								Welcome, admin   About   Status & Updates   L
rver Configu	ration	1						Save Changes 🔒 🔬
Communications	Index	Storage	Accounts	Maintenance	Notification	Logging	Miscellaneous	<b>†</b>
Indexing Engine					1		1	
and storag clusterable Exalead - F or more de customers,	mary of th ast and ea e requirem or high av ast, extrem dicated 6- as well as o switch ir e, as well a Engine: 192. T: 1000	the Indexing sy to use. R hents. Some valability frier mely powerf 4 bit servers corganization ndexing engi as special mig xalead 168.1.106	- Engines provi features, suo Indly. ul, and very s (quad core m Ins that need nes, be sure	ded. There is mo Iditional software th as extended qu calable. Can be cl ecommended), w advanced searchii to read the user	re detail in the or hardware ins ueries, enhance lustered with m rith at least 160 ng, exporting, a	user manual: stallation. We id publishing ultiple index iB RAM. Requ availability fun	Il suited for small and exporting, e and search node uires an installatio actions.	our needs. scale environments that have only modest searching to are not available using the Lucene engine. Not s. All Retain advanced features available. Requires one n process. Recommended for medium to large fully. The Migration Steps page contains a complete

After all changes have been made, select the Save Changes button.

5. Go to the **Migration Steps** page and Select, migration in progress, and select to **Send an e-mail** when migration is completed. Specify a destination address.

Migration Parameters	
Migration is in progress?	TELL Som
Activate an alternative searching server?	1 has harris
Searching Server should be	a survey of
Send an e-mail when migration is completed?	
Comma delimited list of e-mail recipients admin@yourdomain.com	
Type "I understand". This is required to save the form, and is for your protection: I understand Save Migration Parameters	
THE SA ST ANA ST	11 IC LA LA ANA

6. Activate an alternative searching server if desired.

While Exalead is indexing the archive, there will be no mail in the index to be searched through. Depending on how much mail is in the archive, the indexing operation may take a very long time. To have the searching features of Retain available while the archive is processed, specify a separate searching server. In this case, it would be Lucene. The only downside to this operation is that any new mail added to the system during the indexing operation will not be added to the Lucene index, and will not be available to search until Exalead has finished and the search engine has been changed to Exalead.

- 7. After the settings are correct, type "I understand" and select Save Migration Parameters.
- 8. Restart Tomcat on the Retain Server system. When Tomcat starts back up, the settings will be cemented and the archive will be re-indexed into Exalead.

During the indexing process of Exalead, the statistics of the Retain Server Status and update page should rapidly increase. It is one way to monitor the progress of the migration. (The screen shot shown is before the migration is started.)

		Welcome, admin   About   Status & l
		/
n - Sv	ydney - Melbourne - Brisbane - Wellington - Christchurch - A	uckland ·
-		General
M	igrate to GroupWise 8	
Glo	obal Event Series	
Click	CHere For All The Details	
	System Status	
🐇 Jobs 🛛 🚴 Workers	Server 🕘 Updates	
Server		
Index Migration in Progress	false	
SQL Server	ОК	
Server	RetainServer (FXROPPHOTTTI)	
Stored EMails	0	
Engine	standard	
Server started at:	10-Mar-2010 14:00:11	
Archived since server starte	d (total/dupes/new) 0 / 0 / 0	
Server errors	0	
Installation time	08-Mar-2010 15:10:53	
Enable Address Book Cachin	ng Yes	
Enable Address Book Cachin Last Address Book Cache	ng Yes 08-Mar-2010 15:13:43	
Enable Address Book Cachin Last Address Book Cache Enable Index Optimization	ng Yes 08-Mar-2010 15:13:43 Yes	
Enable Address Book Cachin Last Address Book Cache	ng Yes 08-Mar-2010 15:13:43	
Enable Address Book Cachin Last Address Book Cache Enable Index Optimization	ng Yes 08-Mar-2010 15:13:43 Yes Never	
Enable Address Book Cachin Last Address Book Cache Enable Index Optimization Last Index Optimization	ng Yes 08-Mar-2010 15:13:43 Yes Never Never	
Enable Address Book Cachin Last Address Book Cache Enable Index Optimization Last Index Optimization Total documents ever index	ng Yes 08-Mar-2010 15:13:43 Yes Never ked 19897 ue awaiting indexing 0	
Enable Address Book Cachin Last Address Book Cache Enable Index Optimization Last Index Optimization Total documents ever index Total emails in memory que	ng Yes 08-Mar-2010 15:13:43 Yes Never Never ved 19897 ue awaiting indexing 0 o far since uptime 0	
Enable Address Book Cachin Last Address Book Cache Enable Index Optimization Last Index Optimization Total documents ever index Total emails in memory quer Total documents indexed so	ing Yes 08-Mar-2010 15:13:43 Yes Never Never ved 19897 ue awaiting indexing 0 o far since uptime 0 since uptime 0	
Enable Address Book Cachin Last Address Book Cache Enable Index Optimization Last Index Optimization Total documents ever index Total documents indexed so Total documents indexed so Total emails indexed so far s	ing Yes D8-Mar-2010 15:13:43 Yes Never Never ve awaiting indexing 0 o far since uptime 0 since uptime 0 errors since uptime 0	

9. When the migration compete email arrives, return to the Migration Steps page and unselect the **Migration is in progress** setting, type I understand, and Save Migration Parameters.

- Migration Parameters	
Migration is in progress?	
Activate an alternative searching server?	
Searching Server should be	
Send an e-mail when migration is completed?	
Comma delimited list of e-mail recipients admin@yourdomain.com	
Type "I understand". This is required to save the form, and is for your protection: I understand	
Save Migration Parameters	

Even though Lucene has been unselected, it will still exist with all the indexes until removed. Again, Reindexing may take a long time depending on the hardware of the Exalead system, the size of the archive, and the speed of the connecting network. Allow for plenty of time for the indexing to be performed. Time may range from several days to several weeks for extremely large systems.

Once it has been determined that Lucene is no longer wanted or needed as a backup for the system, to save system disk space, the Lucene index should be removed from the system. This is not a necessary step, though it does free up system disk space that currently holds duplicate data that now resides in the more robust Exalead system.

To remove the Lucene Indexes, login as admin to the Retain Server, open a new window or tab, and browse to http://Retain\_Server\_Address/RetainServer/Util/luceneDelete.jsp to remove the users one by one according to UUID. The lucene delete page is also linked form the **Indexer Reset** page. To manually delete the Lucene indexes, remove the contents of the <storage area>/index directory. There should also be a copy of the index directory in the backup folder of the storage area. This measure is not required and

# Appendix G – Exchange Permissions required for Retain

## **Exchange settings**

To connect with exchange, Retain needs a user with appropriate rights. This can be accomplished by using an existing user, or by creating a new one. It is recommended to create a new user for Retain archiving. If creating a new user, ensure that the user is an active user account and that the password

does not change to ensure Retain will be able to access mail without changing settings. This user is sometimes called a 'service account'. Retain calls this user the 'global catalog user'.

The user created or used for Retain must be a "mailboxenabled user" with read access to see all other users, groups, resources, and Exchange Servers in the Exchange Forest. The user will be utilized by both the Retain Server and Worker for LDAP lookups in Active Directory. The Retain user also must have Exchange impersonation rights to every mailbox user on every server in the organization to be archived. The Retain user MUST NOT be a member of any Exchange Administrator group, as Exchange denies impersonation rights for all administrator accounts.



Additional permissions need to be added to the user created

for Retain. The quickest way to add these rights is through the Exchange Management Shell. After creating the new user in Active Directory, open the Exchange Management Shell.

## Grant Impersonation Permissions to the Retain user.

The commands required are different depending on the version of the Exchange Server. Exchange 2010 requires only one command per Exchange system to be issued, whereas Exchange 2007 requires the commands to be run on every Exchange server in the Exchange system to grant required permissions. If the Exchange system contains 2007 and 2010 servers, the different commands must be completed on one server of each type.

## Exchange 2010 command:

For Exchange 2010, the only command necessary for impersonation permissions is:

```
New-ManagementRoleAssignment -name ImpersonationAssignmentName -Role ApplicationImpersonation -User ServiceAccount
```

Where the 'Name' is a name chosen by the administrator and the 'ServiceAccount' is the name of the Retain user.

For Example:

```
New-ManagementRoleAssignment -Name impersonation-retain
-Role ApplicationImpersonation -UserRetain
```

If additional Exchange servers are added to the system after running this command to grant rights to the 'retain' user, the command must be run again to grant rights to the new server.

#### Exchange 2007 commands:

```
('Retain' is the name of the Retain user, or Service Account below)
Get-ClientAccessServer | Add-AdPermission -UserRetain
-ExtendedRights ms-Exch-EPI-Impersonation
Get-MailboxDatabase | Add-AdPermission -UserRetain
-ExtendedRights ms-Exch-EPI-May-Impersonate
Get-MailboxServer | Add-ADPermission -userRetain -ExtendedRights
Send-As, Receive-As, ms-Exch-Store-Admin
```

#### **Room and Equipment Resources:**

To archive Room and Equipment Resources, or to restore them, the Retain user, or Service Account, must also have delegation rights. These commands must be issued manually for each Room and Equipment or resource mailbox on every relevant server. This is required for both 2010 and 2007.

These commands must be issued:

('Retain' is used here as the name of the Service Account, or Retain user, and the 'Mailbox Database' should be changed to the appropriate name.)

(NOTE: every time a new Room and Equipment or resource mailbox is added, the first command must be re-run.)

#### Exchange 2010 commands:

Get-Mailbox -ResultSize Unlimited -Database "Mailbox Database" | Add-MailboxPermission -User "Retain" -AccessRights FullAccess

Add-ADPermission -Identity "Mailbox Database" -User "Retain" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

```
Add-ADPermission -Identity "Mailbox Database" -User "Retain" -ExtendedRights Send-As
```

#### Exchange 2007 commands:

Get-MailboxDatabase | ForEach-Object {Get-Mailbox -ResultSize
Unlimited -Database \$\_.DistinguishedName | Add-MailboxPermission
-UserRetain -AccessRights FullAccess}

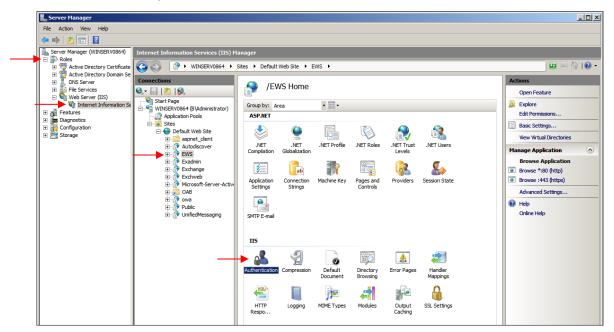
Get-MailboxDatabase | ForEach-Object {Add-ADPermission -Identity
\$\_.DistinguishedName -UserRetain -ExtendedRights
Receive-As,Send-As}

#### Authentication Methods

Retain requires Basic Authentication to be enabled on EACH CAS Exchange server in the system. Open "Server Manager" on Exchange server.

1. In left pane, expand "Roles", expand "Web Server (IIS)", select "Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager".

2. A new "**Connections**" pane opens, expand your Exchange server object, expand "**Sites**", expand "**Default Web Site (Multiple Protocols)**", select "**EWS**".



3. Under heading "**IIS**", open "**Authentication**" icon

🛃 Server Manager					
File Action View Help					
🗢 🔿 🖄 📅 🔢					
L Server Manager (WINSERV0864)		lanager Sites 🕨 Default Web Site 🔸	EWS 🕨		
B DNS Server     Server     GFIE Services     Web Server (IIS)     Winternet Information Se     Diagnostice     Diagnostice     Storage	H → WINSERVUBS (kVaministrator) → Application Pools → Stes → Default Web Site → Autodiscover → Autodiscover → Exdamin ⊕ → Exdamin ⊕ → Exdamin ⊕ → Exdamin ⊕ → Exdamin	Authenticatio	n Status Disabled Disabled Disabled Disabled Disabled Disabled Enabled	Response Type HTTP 401 Challenge HTTP 302 Challenge HTTP 302 (challenge HTTP 304 Challenge	Actions Eak P Help Online Help
	B → OAB B → Owa B → Public B → UnifiedMessaging				

4. Select "**Basic Authentication**", click "**Enable**" in right pane.

You can now close "Server Manager".

C

🚳 My World

🧛 NDS

There are two ways to create a Trusted Application key: through ConsoleOne in GroupWise 8, or via utilizing a Trusted Application key generator on a connected and authenticated win32 workstation.

<u>File Edit View Wizards Tools H</u>elp

GroupWise System Operations 🕨

GroupWise Utilities

GroupWise Diagnostics

## **Trusted Application Key creation through Console One for GroupWise 8**

🔉 🔍 🗖 🖉 🖉 👔

🗭 . GWTREE.

ିଞ୍ଚ server ିଞ୍ଚି GroupWise

- 📲 Users

🕵 GroupWise System

🗅 ոս

🗿 dom

🔶 🗸 bitter

ConsoleOne with GroupWise 8 supports the native creation of a Trusted Application Key. To create a trusted application key for Retain, select the GroupWise system from the system tree and select **GroupWise System Operations | Trusted Applications...** from the '**Tools**' menu.

The Configure Trusted Application window will open, displaying any and all trusted applications currently listed in the system.

From the Configure Trusted Applications window, select 'Create'.

Enter the Name and description of the Trusted Application, in this case, 'Retain'. The name and description may be anything

desired. Check the 'Provides Message Retention Service and 'Archive Service Address' and provide the IP address or DNS name to the Retain server and the port: 48080

Archive Service address:	×			
TCP/IP Address	1			
IP Address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 106				
O DNS Host Name: RetainServerDNS or IP Address				
Archive Service port: 48080				
O <u>K</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp				

The location for



	Edit Trusted Application >	۲			
Name: Description:	Retain Message Archive Service				
TCP/IP Address:					
Requires SSL					
🖌 Provides Message Ro	ention Service				
✓ Allow access to Archive Service					
Archive Service add	ess: 192.168.1.106:48080 🖉				
Archive Service requires SSL					
Location for key file:	~/Desktop				
Name of key file:	RetainTAppKey.txt				
	O <u>K</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp				

the key file and name may be anything desired, but the key file is saved in plain text, so add the .txt extension or open with an editor. The key may be copied and pasted into the Retain interface, or entered manually. The key file may be saved for records or discarded. The new Trusted Application Key is active and now appears to be edited, removed, or removed and recreated.



## Users Guide

Select Domain...

System Preferences.

Admin-Defined Fields...

Pending Operations..

Internet Addressing... Trusted Applications...

Addressing Rules...

Time <u>Z</u>ones...

LDAP Servers... Global Signatures...

eDirectory User Synchronization...

External System Synchronization...

Software Directory Management...

Web Calendar Publishing Hosts..

Restore Area Management...

## **GroupWise Trusted Application Key generator**

IMPORTANT Information about the Trusted Application Key generator:

- > The Trusted Application Key generator must be run from a win32 or compatible system.
- You must use the program included with Retain. The program included with other GWAVA products won't work for Retain.
- > Your workstation must have the Novell and GroupWise clients installed.
- > You must be logged in as the ADMINISTRATOR of the PRIMARY DOMAIN.
- The Trusted App Generator requires access to the domain database; in Linux this requires a SAMBA share or equivalent.
- Note: The Trusted Application Key takes a few moments to propagate through the GroupWise system and therefore it may not be ready for testing or use immediately after you've generated it.

From the GroupWise Module page, select the link to download the Trusted Application Key generator, and select 'run', or run a previously downloaded and saved copy.

1) Click RUN to download and run the Trusted Application Key generator.



2) Follow the wizard. Click Next.

😹 GWAVA Trusted Application	1 Creator	
Select GroupWise domain database	(wpdomain.db)	T
Domain Directory:		Create Trusted Key
Generate key for product:	Retain	Test Trusted Key
Generated Key:		Cancel
Test trusted key for this mailbox:		

Copyright © 2012 GWAVA Inc. All rights reserved.

3) Find your GroupWise domain database. Click on the "..." button.

elect GroupWise domain database	(wpdomain.db)		
Domain Directory:	F:\gwsys\gw2dom\wpdomain.db		Create Trusted K
Generate key for product:	Retain	~	Test Trusted Ke
Generated Key:			Cancel
Test trusted key for this mailbox:			

4) Once you have found your domain, click "Create Trusted Key".

GWAVA Trusted Appl	ication Generator				
A new Trusted Application has been created and the Generated Key has been copied to the Clipboard. Depending on the configuration and speed of your GroupWise system, it may take up to one minute before this new key actually can be used.					
- GWAVA Trusted Application Creator					
Select GroupWise domain database	Select GroupWise domain database (wpdomain.db)				
Domain Directory:	F:\gwsys\gw2dom\wpdomain.db	Create Trusted Key			
Generate key for product:	Retain	Test Trusted Key			
Generated Key:	03E633610DC00000B64CEC00FF007B0003E633620DC00000B64CEC00FF007B00	Cancel			
Test trusted key for this mailbox:	colin				
		ļ			

NOTE: Please allow a few moments for the Trusted Application Key to propagate through the GroupWise system before testing it. You may proceed without testing the key but if you want to test it, please allow the time for the key to propagate through the system.

X Cancel

5) When the key has been generated, enter the name of a valid user on your post office and test the key by clicking "Test Trusted Key". You will be asked to log in to GroupWise for this user.

Step Retain continu	<mark>up - TrustKey talling</mark> Please wait while Setup installs		generate a trusted application
GWAVA Trusted Applie Select GroupWise domain dat Domain Directory: Generate key for product: Generated Key: Test trusted key for this ma		Startup         ?           coln	
All Gro DNS n may m PO Host Nam	8	Ca	please specify the default po
GWAVA Trusted Applicat			
Domain Directory: Generate key for product:	F:\gwsys\gw2dom\wp Retain	idomain.db	Create Trusted Key Test Trusted Key

6) Once your login was successful, you know that both your trusted application key and the SOAP mechanism are working properly. The trusted application key is now copied to your clipboard so you can paste it to the Retain configuration page.

Generated Key:

Test trusted key for this mailbox: Login for: Colin James was succesful

03E633610DC00000B64CEC00FF007B0003E633620DC00000B64CEC00FF007B00